

### Adjectives & Adverbs 6

- Directions:
- 1) Label the nouns (N) and the verbs (V).
  - 2) Label the adjectives (adj) and the adverbs (adv).
  - 3) Draw an arrow from the adjective or adverb to the word it describes.
  - 4) On the blank, write the question the adjective or adverb answers.

Examples:

Many adults use bicycles for exercising. [Which adults?]

You must drive carefully on icy roads. [How must you drive? AND What kind of roads?]

1. Acorns are a favorite food of squirrels. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. The sky is blue. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. My dog chases the neighborhood cats. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. My daughter will soon leave for college. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. People should walk carefully on ice. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. That desk has stacks of mail and papers. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Tia drives fast. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. This is the fastest route to school. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Decide quickly if you want the tickets. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. The band proudly marched down the street. \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Poua had a dentist appointment yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
  12. The salad was very delicious. \_\_\_\_\_
  13. Paulo shops wisely for electronics. \_\_\_\_\_
  14. A slow snail crawled up the side of the aquarium. \_\_\_\_\_
  15. The snail crawled slowly up the side of the aquarium. \_\_\_\_\_
  16. The small boy sat in a high chair to eat his lunch. \_\_\_\_\_
  17. Later the moon was full and shone brightly. \_\_\_\_\_
  18. Juanita seldom drives her car; she often walks. \_\_\_\_\_
  19. I finally finished my sociology project. \_\_\_\_\_
  20. Suddenly a car appeared from nowhere. \_\_\_\_\_

Adjectives & Adverbs 6 - KEY

1. Acorns are a favorite food of squirrels. [What kind of food?]
2. The sky is blue. [What kind of sky?]
3. My dog chases the neighborhood cats. [Which cats?]
4. My daughter will soon leave for college. [When will she leave?]
5. People should walk carefully on ice. [How should people walk?]
6. That desk has stacks of mail and papers. [Which desk?]
7. Tia drives fast. [How does Tia drive?]
8. This is the fastest route to school. [What kind or which route?]
9. Decide quickly if you want the tickets. [How or when should you decide?]
10. The band proudly marched down the street. [How did the band march?]

LV = linking verb  
 HV = helping verb  
 MV = main verb  
 (HV + MV) =  
 verb phrase

HINTS:

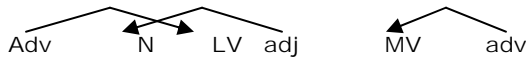
Adjectives describe nouns and pronouns. They answer –  
 - What kind?  
 - Which one?  
 - How many?

Adverbs describe verbs, adjectives & other adverbs. They answer –  
 - How? (-ly)  
 - When?  
 - Where?  
 - To what extent? (How \_\_\_\_ is it?)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. Poua had a dentist appointment yesterday. [What kind of appointment? When was the appointment?]
12. The salad was very delicious. [What kind of salad? How delicious was the salad? [This answers "to what extent?" – an adverb question.]
13. Paulo shops wisely for electronics. [How does Paulo shop?]
14. A slow snail crawled up the side of the aquarium. [What kind of snail?]
15. The snail crawled slowly up the side of the aquarium. [How did the snail crawl?]
16. The small boy sat in a high chair to eat his lunch. [Which or what kind of boy and chair?]

Adjectives & Adverbs 7 – KEY (Continued)



17. Later the moon was full and shone brightly. [When was the moon full & when did it shine? How did the moon shine? What kind or which moon?]



18. Juanita seldom drives her car; she often walks. [When does she drive? When does she walk?]



19. I finally finished my sociology project. [When or how did I finish? Which or what kind of project?]



20. Suddenly a car appeared from nowhere. [How or when did a car appear?]

### Using the Correct Adjective or Adverb

Directions: Underline the word that correctly completes each sentence.

Example: Gina ran (good, well) in the final race. Gina ran (good, well) in the final race.

- 1) The morning looks (good, well) for our garage sale.
- 2) I felt so (bad, badly) ever since I went swimming yesterday.
- 3) You will (sure, surely) have to clean up this mess before your roommate returns.
- 4) I (sure, surely) hope the mall is open late tonight.
- 5) Claudia felt (bad, badly) about having to sell her favorite antique chair.
- 6) My interview for the new job went very (good, well).
- 7) The boy felt (sad, sadly) about his best friend moving away.
- 8) I'm (real, really) sure that this afternoon's meeting is canceled.
- 9) Matthew seems (real, really) upset about losing the football game.
- 10) Your dancing always looks so (good, well).

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: Make any corrections necessary in the following sentences.

- 11) Rachel feels real bad about breaking her mother's favorite vase.
- 12) Do you think that paint will look well with the rug?
- 13) The hockey team felt sad about losing the state championship title.
- 14) Fighting is sure not the answer to their problems.
- 15) I had a real bad headache after the final exam.
- 16) The cake tasted well enough to enter it in the contest.
- 17) She looked good in her new wedding dress.
- 18) The dog ran real fast once the rabbit jumped out of the bushes.
- 19) The driver was sure that the car ahead of him had a flat tire.
- 20) The kitchen sink leaks bad.

◆ Check your work.

### Using the Correct Adjective or Adverb - KEY

Directions: Underline the word that correctly completes each sentence.

Example: Gina ran (good, well) in the final race. Gina ran (good, well) in the final race.

- 1) The morning looks (good, well) for our garage sale.
  - 2) I felt so (bad, badly) ever since I went swimming yesterday.
  - 3) You will (sure, surely) have to clean up this mess before your roommate returns.
  - 4) I (sure, surely) hope the mall is open late tonight.
  - 5) Claudia felt (bad, badly) about having to sell her favorite antique chair.
  - 6) My interview for the new job went very (good, well).
  - 7) The boy felt (sad, sadly) about his best friend moving away.
  - 8) I'm (real, really) sure that this afternoon's meeting is canceled.
  - 9) Matthew seems (real, really) upset about losing the football game.
  - 10) Your dancing always looks so (good, well).
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: Make any necessary corrections in the following sentences. If there are no errors, write correct.

- 11) Rachel feels really bad about breaking her mother's favorite vase.
- 12) Do you think that paint will look good with the rug?
- 13) The hockey team felt sad about losing the state championship title. *correct*
- 14) Fighting is surely not the answer to their problems.
- 15) I had a really bad headache after the final exam.
- 16) The cake tasted good enough to enter it in the contest.
- 17) She looked good in her new wedding dress. *correct*
- 18) The dog ran really fast once the rabbit jumped out of the bushes.
- 19) The driver was sure that the car ahead of him had a flat tire. *correct*
- 20) The kitchen sink leaks badly.

## Adjectives and Adverbs 3

Directions:

- 1) Label each noun (n).
- 2) Label each verb (v).
- 3) Label each adjective (adj) and each adverb (adv).
- 4) The number at the end of sentences 1-5 indicates how many modifiers.

Example:    **adv**            **v**        **adj**    **n**  
              Suddenly we heard a loud noise.

- 1) The small boy opened the door very cautiously. (3)
- 2) Please handle this delicate vase very carefully. (4)
- 3) The five weary people waited at the bus stop for the late bus. (4)
- 4) Large herds of cattle grazed on these vast plains. (3)
- 5) They are going today and tomorrow. (2)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) Juanita, you read very clearly.
- 7) The instructor answered my difficult question promptly and politely.
- 8) The baby squirrel scampered nimbly over the rail fence.
- 9) The little stream ran swiftly under the rustic bridge.
- 10) The wide wooden door of the old barn had rusty hinges.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) We were studying very quietly until we heard a loud crash.
- 12) The waves beat heavily against the old pier near the summer cottage.
- 13) Very distinctly we heard the steady rumble of the storm.
- 14) Always write clearly and correctly.
- 15) Courageous people are not discouraged easily by negative comments.

◆ Check your work.

## Adjectives and Adverbs 3 - KEY

Directions:

- 5) Label each noun (n).
- 6) Label each verb (v).
- 7) Label each adjective (adj) and each adverb (adv).
- 8) The number at the end of sentences 1-5 indicates how many modifiers.

Example: **adv v adj n**  
Suddenly we heard a loud noise.

- adj n v n adv adv**  
1) The small boy opened the door very cautiously. (3)
- v adj adj n adv adv**  
2) Please handle this delicate vase very carefully. (4)
- adj adj n v adj n adj n**  
3) The five weary people waited at the bus stop for the late bus. (4)
- adj n n v adj adj n**  
4) Large herds of cattle grazed on these vast plains. (3)
- v v adv adv**  
5) They are going today and tomorrow. (2)

◆ Stop here and have an instructor check your work.

- n v adv adv**  
6) Juanita, you read very clearly.
- n v adj n adv adv**  
7) The instructor answered my difficult question promptly and politely.
- adj n v adv adj n**  
8) The baby squirrel scampered nimbly over the rail fence.
- adj n v adv adj n**  
9) The little stream ran swiftly under the rustic bridge.
- adj adj n adj n v adj n**  
10) The wide wooden door of the old barn had rusty hinges.

◆ Stop here and have an instructor check your work.

- v v adv adv v adj n**  
11) We were studying very quietly until we heard a loud crash.
- n v adv adj n adj n**  
12) The waves beat heavily against the old pier near the summer cottage.
- adv adv v adj n n**  
13) Very distinctly we heard the steady rumble of the storm.
- adv v adv adv**  
14) Always write clearly and correctly.
- adj n v adv v adv adj n**  
15) Courageous people are not discouraged easily by negative comments.

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

### Adjectives & Adverbs 4

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adjectives (adj) and the adverbs (adv).

Example: *N adv V prep N adj N adj N adj N adv*  
Ann carefully thought about buying her best friend a birthday present at the local mall yesterday.

1. The sloth slowly walked along the branch.
2. The watermelon is ripe.
3. The lion ate a huge steak.
4. President Bush gave his budget proposal to Congress.
5. My cookies were made with chocolate chips.
6. The children were very hungry and quickly ate the delicious cookies.
7. Their house now has three bathrooms.
8. Jean has already left for the Appleton airport.
9. Isa's telephone never stopped its annoying ringing.
10. I could not wait to call Yee, my best friend, and tell him my good news.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. Later we will meet at the outdoor movie theater.
12. The hinges were very rusty and squeaked loudly as we opened the barn door.
13. That gray squirrel is awfully persistent about getting to my favorite bird feeder.
14. A friendly stranger talked excitedly with me at a downtown Italian restaurant.
15. A striped green snake slithered swiftly through the tall grass.
16. A very clever dog buried a steak bone in my front yard yesterday.
17. A giant tortoise walked rather slowly across the green, grassy path.
18. This Grecian vase is lovely; the shop owners imported it directly from Eastern Europe.
19. Fox Valley Technical College graduates can easily apply for many jobs in their chosen fields.
20. My two closest relatives, Aunt Susie and Uncle Ross, will soon arrive from Michigan.

◆ Check your work.



Adjectives & Adverbs 4 - KEY

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adjectives (adj) and the adverbs (adv).

Example: *N adv V prep N adj N adj N adj N adv*  
Ann carefully thought about buying her best friend a birthday present at the local mall yesterday.

1. *N adv MV\* N*  
The sloth slowly walked along the branch.
2. *N LV\*adj*  
The watermelon is ripe.
3. *N MV adj N*  
The lion ate a huge steak.
4. *(Adj + N or Prop N) MV adj N N*  
President Bush gave his budget proposal to Congress.
5. *N HV\* MV adj N*  
My cookies were made with chocolate chips.
6. *N LV adv adj adv MV adj N*  
The children were very hungry and quickly ate the delicious cookies.
7. *N adv MV adj N*  
Their house now has three bathrooms.
8. *N HV adv MV adj N*  
Jean has already left for the Appleton airport.
9. *adj N adv MV adj N*  
Isa's telephone never stopped its annoying ringing.
10. *HV adv MV N adj N MV adj N*  
I could not wait to call Yee, my best friend, and tell him my good news.

\*LV = linking verb  
\*HV = helping verb  
\*MV = main verb

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. *adv HV MV adj adj N*  
Later we will meet at the outdoor movie theater.
12. *N LV adv adj MV adv MV adj N*  
The hinges were very rusty and squeaked loudly as we opened the barn door.
13. *Adj adj N LV adv adj N adj adj N*  
That gray squirrel is awfully persistent about getting to my favorite bird feeder.
14. *Adj N MV adv adj adj N*  
A friendly stranger talked excitedly with me at a downtown Italian restaurant.
15. *adj adj N MV adv adj N*  
A striped green snake slithered swiftly through the tall grass.
16. *Adj adj N MV adj N adj N adv*  
A very clever dog buried a steak bone in my front yard yesterday.
17. *adj N MV adv adv adj adj N MV adv adj N*  
A giant tortoise walked rather slowly across the green, grassy path.
18. *Considered 1 multiword proper adj N HV adv MV adj N adj*  
This Grecian vase is lovely; the shop owners imported it directly from Eastern Europe.
19. *N*  
Fox Valley Technical College graduates can easily apply for many jobs in their chosen fields.
20. *Adj adj N adj +N /Prop N adj +N /Prop N HV adv MV N*  
My two closest relatives, Aunt Susie and Uncle Ross, will soon arrive from Michigan.

### Adjectives & Adverbs 5

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N) and the verbs (V).  
2) Label the adjectives (adj) and the adverbs (adv).  
3) Connect the adjective or adverb to the word it describes.

Examples:  $N$   $v$  —  $adv$   $prep$   $N$   $N$   $adj$  —  $N$   $V$  phrase  $N$   
Ann *thought* carefully about buying a car. Her best *friend* had bought a dog.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;"><math>N</math> <math>Adv</math> — <math>V</math> <math>N</math></p> <p>1. The plumber <b>quickly</b> repaired the faucet.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><math>N</math> <math>V</math> <math>Adj</math> — <math>N</math></p> <p>2. The cat ate the gray mouse.</p> | <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Question answered</b></p> <p><b>How?</b>(was the faucet repaired)</p> <p><b>What kind?</b>_(of mouse)_</p> |
| 3. The sweater was knit from rough wool.  | _____  |
| 4. The car was rusty.   | _____  |
| 5. Antonio dances gracefully.   | _____  |
| 6. The candidate talks foolishly.   | _____  |
| 7. Greta likes classical music.   | _____  |
| 8. The apartment has four rooms.  | _____  |
| 9. Pheng whispered softly.  | _____  |
| 10. A man entered the building yesterday.   | _____  |
| ◆ Stop here and check your work.  |  |
| 11. The taco tasted delicious.  | _____  |
| 12. Mel will shop later.  | _____  |
| 13. Several lamps lit the room.   | _____  |
| 14. The shop was rather dusty. (Find 1 adverb + 1 adjective in this sentence.)  | _____  |
| 15. Tony took notes rapidly.  | _____  |
| 16. The bell rang loudly.   | _____  |
| 17. Tanika played outside with her children.  | _____  |
| 18. The turtle runs quite slowly to the pond. (Find 2 adverbs in this sentence.)  | _____  |
| 19. The little puppy eats from the dish.  | _____  |
| 20. A bright star shines in the sky.  | _____  |

**Adjectives** describe *nouns* or *pronouns* and answer:

- What kind?
- Which one?
- How many?

**Adverbs** describe *verbs*, *adjectives*, or other *adverbs*. They answer:

- How?
- When?
- Where?
- To what extent? (How \_\_\_\_\_ is it?)

### Adjectives & Adverbs 5 KEY

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N) and the verbs (V).  
2) Label the adjectives (adj) and the adverbs (adv).  
3) Connect the adjective or adverb to the word it describes.

1. The plumber <sup>N</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>N</sup> **quickly** repaired the faucet.

**Question answered**  
How?(was the faucet repaired)

2. The cat <sup>N</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adj</sup> <sup>N</sup> ate the gray mouse.

**What kind?**\_(of mouse)\_

3. The sweater <sup>N</sup> was <sup>V phr</sup> knit from <sup>Adj</sup> **rough** <sup>N</sup> wool.

**What kind?**

4. The car <sup>N</sup> was <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adj</sup> **rusty**. (Describes "car")

**What kind/which one?**

5. Antonio <sup>N</sup> dances <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **gracefully**.

**How?**

6. The candidate <sup>N</sup> talks <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **foolishly**.

**How?**

7. Greta <sup>N</sup> likes <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adj</sup> **classical** <sup>N</sup> music.

**What kind?**

8. The apartment <sup>N</sup> has <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **four** rooms.

**How many?**

9. Pheng <sup>N</sup> whispered <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **softly**.

**How?**

10. A man <sup>N</sup> entered <sup>V</sup> the building <sup>N</sup> **yesterday**.  
(Describes "entered.")

**When?**

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. The taco <sup>N</sup> tasted <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **delicious**. (Describes "taco")

**What kind?**

12. Mel <sup>N</sup> will shop <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **later**.

**When?**

13. **Several** <sup>N</sup> lamps <sup>V</sup> lit the room. <sup>Adv</sup> <sup>Adj</sup>

**How many?**

14. The shop <sup>N</sup> was <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **rather** <sup>N</sup> **dusty**. (Find 1 adverb + 1 adjective in this sentence.)

"Rather" describes "dusty" & answers **To what extent?**  
How dusty was it? "Dusty" describes "shop" & answers **What kind?**

15. Tony <sup>N</sup> took <sup>V</sup> notes <sup>N</sup> **rapidly**. (Describes "took")

**How?**

16. The bell <sup>N</sup> rang <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **loudly**.

**How?**

17. Tanika <sup>N</sup> played <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **outside** <sup>N</sup> with her children.

**Where?**

18. The turtle <sup>N</sup> runs <sup>V</sup> <sup>Adv</sup> **quite** <sup>Adv</sup> **slowly** to the pond. (Find 2 adverbs in this sentence.)

**To what extent?** How slowly is it? "Slowly" describes "runs" & answers **How?**

19. The <sup>Adj</sup> **little** <sup>N</sup> puppy <sup>V</sup> eats from the dish. <sup>N</sup>

**What kind/which one?**

20. A <sup>Adj</sup> **bright** <sup>N</sup> star <sup>V</sup> shines in the sky. <sup>N</sup>

**What kind?**

**Adjectives** describe *nouns* or *pronouns* and answer:

- What kind?
- Which one?
- How many?

**Adverbs** describe *verbs*, *adjectives*, or other *adverbs*. They answer:

- How?
- When?
- Where?
- To what extent?  
(How \_\_\_\_ is it?)

## Apostrophes 1

Directions: Use apostrophes correctly in the following sentences. If there is no error, write Correct after the sentence.

Example:	Id like to visit a Mars.	OR	Is that motorcycle your's?
	I'd like to visit Mars.		Is that motorcycle yours?

- 1) Julio isn't coming to the library with us.
- 2) Mens coats are sold in the new store.
- 3) The captains ship was one of the newest.
- 4) Many players uniforms are red.
- 5) That house on the corner is our's.
- 6) All letters should have a written response within two days time.
- 7) The dog wagged it's tail when its master returned.
- 8) A persons worth has nothing to do with a bank balance.
- 9) Ivan took they're snowmobiles in for a two weeks repair job.
- 10) Our car is gray, but theirs is green.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) I've fixed your car, but I wont get to their's until next week.
- 12) The Smiths address is 98 College Ave., Appleton, Wisconsin.
- 13) The puppy is in it's cage for the night.
- 14) If you dont get started, theyll win.
- 15) Andy's hair doesn't look good at all.
- 16) She barely did a days' work!
- 17) Teach your children to respect all people when their young.
- 18) I thought the boat was theres.
- 19) Your right. It is time for break.
- 20) Juan doesn't like Minnesotas cold winters.

◆ Check your work.

## Apostrophes 1 - KEY

Directions: Use apostrophes correctly in the following sentences. If there is no error, write Correct after the sentence.

Example:	Id like to visit a Mars.	OR	Is that motorcycle your's?
	I'd like to visit Mars.		Is that motorcycle yours?

- 1) Julio isn't coming to the library with us. Correct
  - 2) Mens coats are sold in the new store. Men's
  - 3) The captains ship was one of the newest. captain's
  - 4) Many players uniforms are red. players'
  - 5) That house on the corner is our's. ours
  - 6) All letters should have a written response within two days time. days'
  - 7) The dog wagged it's tail when its master returned. its
  - 8) A persons worth has nothing to do with a bank balance. person's
  - 9) Ivan took they're snowmobiles in for a two weeks repair job. their weeks'
  - 10) Our car is gray, but theirs is green. Correct
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) I've fixed your car, but I wont get to their's until next week. won't theirs
  - 12) The Smiths address is 98 College Ave., Appleton, Wisconsin. Smiths'
  - 13) The puppy is in it's cage for the night. its
  - 14) If you dont get started, theyll win. don't they'll
  - 15) Andy's hair doesn't look good at all. Correct
  - 16) She barely did a days' work! day's
  - 17) Teach your children to respect all people when their young. they're
  - 18) I thought the boat was theres. theirs
  - 19) Your right. It is time for break. You're
  - 20) Juan doesn't like Minnesotas cold winters. Minnesota's

## Apostrophes 2 - Mixed

Directions: Punctuate these sentences correctly using apostrophes.

Example: The states governors will meet in November for a conference.  
The states' governors will meet in November for a conference.

- 1) The dog lost it's bone.
- 2) The monkeys cages were cleaned yesterday.
- 3) This is the employees lunchroom.
- 4) Weve never visited the state of Washington.
- 5) The boys jacket is torn.
- 6) Cheryls mother was baking a special cake for her sisters birthday.
- 7) The babys rattle is in the crib.
- 8) The pen is their's.
- 9) These are her carpenters tools.
- 10) Those are the womens clothes.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Its a fact that most turtles have hard shells.
- 12) Marys notebook is in the kitchen.
- 13) Were sure the game begins at noon.
- 14) That coffee mug is our's.
- 15) He rented the room in Matts house.
- 16) The United States flag is red, white, and blue.
- 17) Most of the floor has lost it's shine.
- 18) These are the childrens crayons.
- 19) This mans shoes are shiny.
- 20) John said that well go home on Wednesday.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Apostrophes 2 - Mixed

Directions: Punctuate these sentences correctly using apostrophes.

Example:     The states governors will meet in November for a conference. The <u>states</u> ' governors will meet in November for a conference.
--

- 1) The dog lost its bone.
- 2) The monkeys' cages were cleaned yesterday.
- 3) This is the employees' lunchroom.
- 4) We've never visited the state of Washington.
- 5) The boy's jacket is torn.
- 6) Cheryl's mother was baking a special cake for her sister's birthday.
- 7) The baby's rattle is in the crib.
- 8) The pen is theirs.
- 9) These are her carpenter's tools.
- 10) Those are the women's clothes.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) It's a fact that most turtles have hard shells.
- 12) Mary's notebook is in the kitchen.
- 13) We're sure the game begins at noon.
- 14) That coffee mug is ours.
- 15) He rented the room in Matt's house.
- 16) The United States' flag is red, white, and blue.
- 17) Most of the floor has lost its shine.
- 18) These are the children's crayons.
- 19) This man's shoes are shiny.
- 20) John said that we'll go home on Wednesday.

Capitalization 1  
Mixed Practice (Rules C1-C12)

Directions: Insert capital letters where they are necessary.

Example:	M	M		W	W
	mary	morgan	was a retired firefighter from	wausau,	wisconsin.

- 1) tuesday is my favorite day of the week.
  - 2) mary tyler moore threw her hat in the air during her show's opening credits
  - 3) my aunt, valorie marlatt, is a retired nursing instructor from indiana.
  - 4) sally did very well on her french and math tests.
  - 5) did you receive the message that i had called on wednesday night?
  - 6) the wolf river winds its way through the beautiful landscape of wisconsin.
  - 7) eaton is the name of an ohio city.
  - 8) portage, Wisconsin, claims to be where the north begins.
  - 9) the majestic sears tower in chicago stands higher than any of the surrounding buildings.
  - 10) st. patrick's day falls on march 17 every year.
- Stop here and check your work.
- 11) the fourth of july is in the middle of the summer.
  - 12) i love the beauty of the spring season.
  - 13) margaret reached into her purse to get her cherry life savers.
  - 14) u.s. bank is a large bank serving a many customers in the midwest.
  - 15) each year, the teacher reads *little house in the big woods* to his students.
  - 16) my dentist always recommends crest toothpaste for our children's dental needs.
  - 17) future farmers of america helps the youth in rural and agricultural areas of the country.
  - 18) the national football leagues sets rules and regulations for professional football.
  - 19) the weather in winter can be treacherous for drivers.
  - 20) dr. richard siehl, m.d., is the town doctor in montel, maine.



Capitalization 1 – KEY  
Mixed Practice (Rules C1-C12)

Directions: Insert capital letters where they are necessary.

Example:	M	M		W	W
	mary	morgan	was a retired firefighter from	wausau,	wisconsin.

- 1) T u e s d a y is my favorite day of the week.
- 2) M a r y T y l e r M o o r e threw her hat in the air during the show's opening credits
- 3) M y aunt, V a l o r i e M a r l a t t, is a retired nursing instructor from I n d i a n a.
- 4) S a l l y did very well on her F r e n c h and math tests.
- 5) D i d you receive the message that I had called on W e d n e s d a y night?
- 6) T h e W o l f R i v e r winds its way through the beautiful landscape of W i s c o n s i n.
- 7) E a t o n is the name of an O h i o city.
- 8) P o r t a g e, W i s c o n s i n, claims to be where the N o r t h begins.
- 9) T h e majestic S e a r s T o w e r in C h i c a g o stands higher than any of the surrounding buildings.
- 10) S t. P a t r i c k ' s D a y falls on M a r c h 17 every year.

Stop here and check your work.

- 11) T h e F o u r t h o f J u l y is in the middle of the summer.
- 12) I l o v e the beauty of the spring season.
- 13) M a r g a r e t reached into her purse to get her cherry L i f e S a v e r s.
- 14) U . S . B a n k is a large bank serving a great deal of customers in the M i d w e s t.
- 15) E a c h year, the teacher reads *L i t t l e H o u s e i n t h e B i g W o o d s* to his students.
- 16) M y dentist always recommends C r e s t toothpaste for our children's dental needs.
- 17) F u t u r e F a r m e r s o f A m e r i c a helps the youth in rural and agricultural areas of the country.
- 18) T h e N a t i o n a l F o o t b a l l L e a g u e sets rules and regulations for professional football.
- 19) T h e weather in winter can be treacherous for drivers.
- 20) D r. R i c h a r d S i e h l, M . D ., is the town doctor in M o n t e l, M a i n e.

## Capitalization 2 - Mixed

Directions: Capitalize each word to make the sentence correct.

Example:    my boat is going to be in the race. My boat is going to be in the race.
--

- 1) my uncle never forgets my birthday.
- 2) The songs of elvis presley are still popular.
- 3) My aunt, susan mosing, is very special to our family.
- 4) Remember, i will always be your friend.
- 5) The planet mercury has been extensively studied by astronomers.
- 6) Most of the eastern countries have experienced global warming.
- 7) John and Mai will travel down the mississippi river.
- 8) new york city has set up a memorial for 9/11.
- 9) Troy will attend a conference in madison, wisconsin.
- 10) the car was traveling south and then turned west.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) People plan picnics and attend parades on the fourth of july.
- 12) The catholic religion has always been strong in spain.
- 13) The pioneers went to the midwest in wagon trains.
- 14) The weather in march seldom feels like spring.
- 15) Tong always prefers to drink maxwell house coffee.
- 16) These two books will always be popular: the grapes of wrath and gone with the wind.
- 17) My favorite movie is pretty woman.
- 18) Toby Keith lives at 1930 nashville drive.
- 19) My friends enjoy eating at taco bell.
- 20) The store will not be open on sunday.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Capitalization 2 - Mixed

Directions: Capitalize each word to make the sentence correct.

Example:    my boat is going to be in the race. My boat is going to be in the race.
--

- 1) My uncle never forgets my birthday.
- 2) The songs of Elvis Presley are still popular.
- 3) My aunt, Susan Mosing, is very special to our family.
- 4) Remember, I will always be your friend.
- 5) The planet Mercury has been extensively studied by astronomers.
- 6) Most of the Eastern countries have experienced global warming.
- 7) John and Mai will travel down the Mississippi River.
- 8) New York City has set up a memorial for 9/11.
- 9) Troy will attend a conference in Madison, Wisconsin.
- 10) The car was traveling south and then turned west.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) People plan picnics and attend parades on the Fourth of July.
- 12) The Catholic religion has always been strong in Spain.
- 13) The pioneers went to the Midwest in wagon trains.
- 14) The weather in March seldom feels like spring.
- 15) Tong always prefers to drink Maxwell House coffee.
- 16) These two books will always be popular: The Grapes of Wrath and Gone with the Wind.
- 17) My favorite movie is Pretty Woman.
- 18) Toby Keith lives at 1930 Nashville Drive.
- 19) My friends enjoy eating at Taco Bell.
- 20) The store will not be open on Sunday.

## Choosing Who or Whom 1

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form.

*Hint: Use the "he/him" test.* (he) [he = who; him = whom]  
Example: Ann is the friend (who/whom) ^ went to a movie on Saturday evening.

1. John is pointing to (who/whom) was selected as the co-manager.
  2. Chris and I are the teachers (who/whom) directed the play.
  3. Mai had to decide (who/whom) she would choose to join her band.
  4. Students (who/whom) study carefully usually score well on their tests.
  5. The group gave a round of applause to (whoever/whomever) volunteered to speak.
  6. My sister, (who/whom) lives Green Bay, is my best friend.
  7. The teacher is unhappy with (whoever/whomever) doesn't complete the homework.
  8. He will have to meet (whoever/whomever) you decide to send to the conference.
  9. They are the students (who/whom) have won more awards for public speaking.
  10. The representatives (who/whom) we selected will vote for us at the meeting.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Does Betty know (who/whom) she should tell about how to sort the mail?
  12. (Who/Whom) was surprised at his singing?
  13. Juan brought treats for (whoever/whomever) the team decided to honor after the game.
  14. Paul and she were the cooks (who/whom) made the birthday cake.
  15. Everybody was happy with (who/whom) the class selected as its representative.
  16. Woody is the one (who/whom) I know planned the reunion.
  17. My husband's brother is the one to (who/whom) you should send the meeting information.
  18. Is she the one with (who/whom) you went to the Fox River Mall yesterday?
  19. (Who/Whom) can run as fast as we can?
  20. Rico is coming with (whoever/whomever) is chosen by his work team.

◆ Check your work.

## Choosing Who or Whom 1 - KEY

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form.

*Hint: Use the "he/him" test.* (he) [he = who; him = whom]  
Example: Ann is the friend (who/whom) ^ went to a movie on Saturday evening.

1. John is pointing to (**who**/whom) was selected as the co-manager.
  2. Chris and I are the teachers (**who** /whom) directed the play.
  3. Mai had to decide (who/**whom**) she would choose to join her band.
  4. Students (**who** /whom) study carefully usually score well on their tests.
  5. The group gave a round of applause to (**whoever**/whomever) volunteered to speak.
  6. My sister, (**who** /whom) lives Green Bay, is my best friend.
  7. The teacher is unhappy with (**whoever**/whomever) doesn't complete the homework.
  8. He will have to meet (whoever/**whomever**) you decide to send to the conference.
  9. They are the students (**who** /whom) have won more awards for public speaking.
  10. The representatives (who/**whom**) we selected will vote for us at the meeting.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Does Betty know (who/**whom**) she should tell about how to sort the mail?
  12. (**Who** /Whom) was surprised at his singing?
  13. Juan brought treats for (whoever/**whomever**) the team decided to honor after the game.
  14. Paul and she were the cooks (**who** /whom) made the birthday cake.
  15. Everybody was happy with (who/**whom**) the class selected as its representative.
  16. Woody is the one (**who** /whom) I know planned the reunion.
  17. My husband's brother is the one to (who/**whom**) you should send the meeting information.
  18. Is she the one with (who/**whom**) you went to the Fox River Mall yesterday?
  19. (**Who**/Whom) can run as fast as we can?
  20. Rico is coming with (**whoever**/whomever) is chosen by his work team.

◆ Check your work.

Choosing Who or Whom 2  
(with *who's*, *whose*, *which*, and *that*)

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form.

Hint: Use the "he/him" test. (he) [he = who; him = whom]  
Example: Ann is the friend (who/whom) ^ went to a movie on Saturday evening.

1. To (who/whom/which) should this information be sent?
  2. Is he the person with (who/whom/which) you met?
  3. Bee needs you to locate the Joneses' file with (who/whom/which) you recently worked.
  4. She does not know (who/whom/which) was asked to be the chairperson.
  5. The company (who/whom/that) always had our accounts will soon be under new leadership.
  6. Do you know (who's/whose) desk is over by the window?
  7. Jason knows (who's/whose) coming for dinner tomorrow night.
  8. He will have to meet (whoever/whomever) left the message about the conference.
  9. These are the cars (who/whom/that) will be part of our business fleet.
  10. The people (who/whom/that) we met on the cruise are coming to town on Friday.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Regardless (who/whom) we assign to that position, we must follow company procedures.
  12. (Who/Whom/which) was given the order to process?
  13. Our firm is one (who/whom/that) offers stock options to its employees.
  14. He said he was not certain about (who/whom/which) to ask for advice.
  15. People (who/whom/which) are reliable should be recognized.
  16. I have no way of identifying (who's/whose) briefcase this is.
  17. Community organizations (who/whom/that) work with us are our most loyal contributors.
  18. They are individuals (who/whom/that) we agree will be outstanding leaders.
  19. Tia is one of the managers (who/whom/that) Ms. Bronson recently hired.
  20. Anya knows (who's/whose) next to take a vacation.

◆ Check your work.

Choosing Who or Whom 2 - KEY  
(with *who's*, *whose*, *which*, and *that*)

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form.

Hint: Use the "he/him" test. (he) [he = who; him = whom]  
Example: Ann is the friend (who/whom) ^ went to a movie on Saturday evening.

1. To (who/**whom**/which) should this information be sent?
  2. Is he the person with (who/**whom**/which) you met?
  3. Bee needs you to locate the Joneses' file with (who/whom/**which**) you recently worked.
  4. She does not know (**who**/whom/which) was asked to be the chairperson.
  5. The company (who/whom/**that**) always had our accounts will soon be under new leadership.
  6. Do you know (who's/**whose**) desk is over by the window?
  7. Jason knows (**who's**/whose) coming for dinner tomorrow night.
  8. He will have to meet (**whoever**/whomever) left the message about the conference.
  9. These are the cars (who/whom/**that**) will be part of our business fleet.
  10. The people (who/**whom**/that) we met on the cruise are coming to town on Friday.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Regardless (who/**whom**) we assign to that position, we must follow company procedures.
  12. (**Who**/Whom/which) was given the order to process?
  13. Our firm is one (who/whom/**that**) offers stock options to its employees.
  14. He said he was not certain about (who/**whom**/which) to ask for advice.
  15. People (**who**/whom/which) are reliable should be recognized.
  16. I have no way of identifying (who's/**whose**) briefcase this is.
  17. Community organizations (who/whom/**that**) work with us are our most loyal contributors.
  18. They are individuals (**who**/whom/that) we agree will be outstanding leaders.
  19. Tia is one of the managers (who/**whom**/that) Ms. Bronson recently hired.
  20. Anya knows (**who's**/whose) next to take a vacation.

◆ Check your work.

Commas 1-1 (Rules 1-9)

Directions: Use commas correctly in the following sentences.

Example: This morning I had toast bacon and cereal for breakfast.  
This morning I had toast, bacon, and cereal for breakfast. (Rule 8)

- 1) My brother James Monroe is a candidate for judge.
- 2) Houa open the window please.
- 3) R.H. Robinson Jr. is now R.H. Robinson M.D.
- 4) For eating Mary uses a beautiful spoon from her grandmother.
- 5) Seth won a gold medal on Friday February 7 2006 for free-style swimming.
- ◆ Have an instructor check your work.
- 6) It is an efficient inexpensive unit.
- 7) There were 23544 fans at the game.
- 8) Until May 2000 they lived in Arizona.
- 9) My neighbor Carl is a great tennis player.
- 10) Mario needs to buy bread milk and butter before going home.
- ◆ Have an instructor check your work.
- 11) The mailman a reliable employee is always on time.
- 12) When cleaning Jose always uses a fresh dust rag.
- 13) Someday he hopes to earn more than \$100000.
- 14) Suzanne Adams PhD is coming to give a lecture.
- 15) The Badgers have an exciting young hockey team.



### Commas 1-1 (Rules 1-9) - KEY

Directions: Use commas correctly in the following sentences.

Example: This morning I had toast bacon and cereal for breakfast.  
This morning I had toast, bacon, and cereal for breakfast. (Rule 8)

- 1) My brother, James Monroe, is a candidate for judge.
- 2) Houa, open the window please.
- 3) R.H. Robinson, Jr., is now R.H. Robinson, M.D. [OR Robinson Jr. with no commas, Gregg p. 16]
- 4) For eating, Mary uses a beautiful spoon from her grandmother.
- 5) Seth won a gold medal on Friday, February 7, 2006, for free-style swimming.
- ◆ Have an instructor check your work.
- 6) It is an efficient, inexpensive unit.
- 7) There were 23,544 fans at the game.
- 8) Until May 2000 they lived in Arizona. NONE
- 9) My neighbor Carl is a great tennis player. NONE
- 10) Mario needs to buy bread, milk, and butter before going home.
- ◆ Have an instructor check your work.
- 11) The mailman, a reliable employee, is always on time.
- 12) When cleaning, Jose always uses a fresh dust rag.
- 13) Someday he hopes to earn more than \$100,000.
- 14) Suzanne Adams, Ph.D., is coming to give a lecture.
- 15) The Badgers have an exciting, young hockey team.

## Commas 1-2 + Semicolons

Directions: In each sentence, insert commas or semicolons where they are needed. Some sentences may be correct as written. If so, write **correct** to the left of the number.

Examples: 

	Subject	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Conj	Subj/Verb Phrase	Subject	Verb	Noun
	I	attend	English class	when I'm scheduled,	and	I learn a lot.			
	Subj/Verb	Noun	(Prepositional Phrase)	Conj	Subj/Verb Phrase	Subject/ Verb			

	I	learn a lot	(in English class)	;	when I'm scheduled,	I attend.			
--	---	-------------	--------------------	---	---------------------	-----------	--	--	--

- 1) The instructor was worried about her students and she created some exercises for practice.
- 2) If I can just make it through another semester the wait will be worth it I'll graduate!
- 3) I can't quite seem to understand the difference in conjunctions but hope to by the end of May.
- 4) Striving for the highest scores is your goal the work is hard but it pays off in the end.
- 5) Wouldn't it be better for all students if they read the textbook completed the exercises and worked independently on the tests?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) When buffalo roamed the land all the saddle tramps and cowboys used to mend their ropes by hand.
- 7) Don't fret the end of the course will arrive sooner than you think and you're doing well.
- 8) Fox Valley Technical College has been at 1825 N. Bluemound Drive PO Box 2277 Appleton WI 54912-2277 so send your transcript requests to this address.
- 9) My most recent purchase was an expensive single-cup coffee maker.
- 10) Can it really be you behind those Foster Grant sunglasses?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) You'll need to have \$11590 to pay off your loan by December 2008.
- 12) We've celebrated my birthday on Memorial Day ever since May 25 1965 having it on a spring holiday weekend is usually a lot of fun.
- 13) Above all we have to think of the needs of our customers so they will continue to come into the store to buy what they need.
- 14) The rapid deployment of troops to Iraq has been stressful for these soldiers must leave family behind.
- 15) I still need to complete GOAL Language after I finish Intro to Grammar in addition I need to practice editing the writing of others.

◆ Check your work.

## Commas 1-2 + Semicolons - Key

Directions: In each sentence, insert commas or semicolons where they are needed. Some sentences may be correct as written. If so, write correct to the left of the number.

Subject Verb Adjective Noun Conj Subj/Verb Phrase Subject Verb Noun

Examples: I attend English class when I'm scheduled, and I learn a lot.

Subj/Verb Noun (Prepositional Phrase) Conj Subj/Verb Phrase Subject/Verb

I learn a lot (in English class); when I'm scheduled, I attend.

- 1) The instructor was worried about her students, and she created some exercises for practice.
- 2) If I can just make it through another semester, the wait will be worth it; I'll graduate!
- 3) I can't seem to understand the difference between commas and semicolons but hope to by the end of May. **CORRECT**
- 4) Striving for the highest scores is your goal; the work is hard, but it pays off in the end.
- 5) Wouldn't it be better for all students if they read the textbook, completed the exercises, and worked independently on the tests?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) When buffalo roamed the land, all the saddle tramps and cowboys used to mend their ropes by hand.
- 7) Don't fret; the end of the course will arrive sooner than you think, and you're doing well.
- 8) Fox Valley Technical College has been at 1825 N. Bluemound Drive, PO Box 2277, Appleton, WI 54912-2277, so send your transcript requests to this address.
- 9) My most recent purchase was an expensive, single-cup coffee maker.
- 10) Can it really be you behind those Foster Grant sunglasses? **CORRECT**

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) You'll need to have \$11,590 to pay off your loan by December 2008.
- 12) We've celebrated my birthday on Memorial Day ever since May 25, 1965, having it on a spring holiday weekend is usually a lot of fun.
- 13) Above all, we have to think of the needs of our customers, so they will continue to come into the store to buy what they need.
- 14) The rapid deployment of troops to Iraq has been stressful, for these soldiers must leave family behind.
- 15) I still need to complete GOAL Language after I finish Intro to Grammar, in addition, I need to practice editing the writing of others.

Commas 1-3 & Semicolons  
Mixed Practice (Rules 1-11A)

**Directions:** Following the rules you learned in Lesson 20, place commas or semicolons where they are needed. If no commas or semicolons are needed, write **Correct**.

**Example:** The trip to the beach was scheduled for Friday May 15 2006  
The trip to the beach was scheduled for Friday, May 15, 2006.

- 1) It was a beautiful day so we decided to go to the beach.
  - 2) We packed sunscreen sunglasses flip-flops and a magazine for our trip to the beach.
  - 3) Oh yes you are more than welcome to join our plans for today.
  - 4) To get a good spot on the beach we must arrive early.
  - 5) It was a long hot ride to the sea but we finally made it!
  - 6) Once there we noticed the miles of white sand stretching out to the right and left of us.
  - 7) We unpacked the car however we realized we didn't bring any food for the day.
  - 8) We hoped snacks and drinks could be bought at a nearby kiosk.
  - 9) Sitting under a huge umbrella was perfect protection from the sun.
  - 10) Sam Hollis M.D. recommended sunscreen and hats as other means to keep safe from the sun.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Destin Florida is a beautiful and peaceful beach to visit.
  - 12) The number of tourists during Spring Break might reach 10000 people.
  - 13) We spread out the blanket applied the sunscreen and reached for the magazine.
  - 14) A big blue beach ball plopped down out of nowhere onto our blanket.
  - 15) The sun was hot the breeze was gentle.
  - 16) We met a group from Milwaukee Wisconsin they were on their way to the kiosk for lunch.
  - 17) As the day progressed the sun moved in and out of the clouds floating above in the sky.
  - 18) The day even though lots of fun was coming quickly to an end.
  - 19) We packed up our belongings and moved toward the car.
  - 20) Above all the sun protection information we collected before the day at the beach protected us from getting sunburned.

Commas 1-3 & Semicolons - KEY  
Mixed Practice (Rules 1-11A)

**Directions:** Following the rules you learned in Lesson 20, place commas or semicolons where they are needed. If no commas or semicolons are needed, write **Correct**.

<p><b>Example:</b> The trip to the beach was scheduled for Friday May 15 2006 The trip to the beach was scheduled for Friday, May 15, 2006.</p>
---

- 1) It was a beautiful day, so we decided to go to the beach.
  - 2) We packed sunscreen, sunglasses, flip-flops, and a magazine for our trip to the beach.
  - 3) Oh, yes, you are more than welcome to join our plans for today.
  - 4) To get a good spot on the beach, we must arrive early.
  - 5) It was a long, hot ride to the sea, but we finally made it!
  - 6) Once there, we noticed the miles of white sand stretching out to the right and left of us.
  - 7) We unpacked the car, however, we realized we didn't bring any food for the day.
  - 8) We hoped snacks and drinks could be bought at a nearby kiosk. Correct
  - 9) Sitting under a huge umbrella was perfect protection from the sun. Correct
  - 10) Sam Hollis, M.D., recommended sunscreen and hats as other means to keep safe from the sun.
- Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Destin, Florida, is a beautiful and peaceful beach to visit.
  - 12) The number of tourists during Spring Break might hit the 10,000 people.
  - 13) We spread out the blanket, applied the sunscreen, and reached for the magazine.
  - 14) A big blue beach ball plopped down out of no where onto our blanket. Correct
  - 15) The sun was hot, the breeze was gentle.
  - 16) We met a group from Milwaukee, Wisconsin, they were on their way to the kiosk for lunch.
  - 17) As the day progressed, the sun moved in and out of the clouds floating above in the sky.
  - 18) The day, even though lots of fun, was coming quickly to an end.
  - 19) We packed up our belongings and moved toward the car. Correct
  - 20) Above all, the sun protection information we collected before the day at the beach served us well.

### Commas 1-4: Mixed

Directions: Place commas in these sentences. If no commas are needed, write NONE.

Example: To move the car we hired a wrecker service. To move the car, we hired a wrecker service.
--

- 1) *Of Mice and Men* a book by John Steinbeck is a classic.
  - 2) Do you want to go home Mae?
  - 3) The bombing of Pearl Harbor was on December 7 1941.
  - 4) Joy was born the month of March 1972.
  - 5) My favorite foods are pizza burgers ice cream and French fries.
  - 6) The play will be held on Thursday May 6 2007.
  - 7) To move the car takes a lot of energy.
  - 8) My new address is 321 Mockingbird Drive New London MA 74218.
  - 9) They camped in the woods on a dark stormy night.
  - 10) The new car will cost \$23768.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) President Bush lives at 2000 Pennsylvania Avenue Washington D.C.
  - 12) The conference will be held on December 21 2008.
  - 13) Darrin won the state chess tournament but he lost the national tournament.
  - 14) Joey went on a cruise and he spent \$2670.
  - 15) Chicago the windy city is a place I want to visit next summer.
  - 16) The charity ball was held at 3678 Chestnut Lane Columbus Ohio on February 24 2006.
  - 17) The sports Eli plays are football basketball and baseball.
  - 18) To save money Jean decided to get a second job.
  - 19) The girls went to the fashion show but did not purchase any of the clothes.
  - 20) The girls went to the fashion show but they did not purchase any of the clothes.

◆ Check your work.

### Commas 1-4: Mixed - KEY

Directions: Place commas in these sentences. If no commas are needed, write NONE.

Example: To move the car we hired a wrecker service. To move the car, we hired a wrecker service.
--

- 1) *Of Mice and Men*, a book by John Steinbeck, is a classic.
- 2) Do you want to go home, Mae?
- 3) The bombing of Pearl Harbor was on December 7, 1941.
- 4) Joy was born the month of March 1972. NONE
- 5) My favorite foods are pizza, burgers, ice cream, and French fries. [or pizza burgers, ice cream, and French fries.]
- 6) The play will be held on Thursday, May 6, 2007.
- 7) To move the car takes a lot of energy. NONE
- 8) My new address is 321 Mockingbird Drive, New London, MA 74218.
- 9) They camped in the woods on a dark, stormy night.
- 10) The new car will cost \$23,768.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) President Bush lives at 2000 Pennsylvania Avenue, Washington, D.C.
- 12) The conference will be held on December 21, 2008.
- 13) Darrin won the state chess tournament, but he lost the national tournament.
- 14) Joey went on a cruise, and he spent \$2,670.
- 15) Chicago, the windy city, is a place I want to visit next summer.
- 16) The charity ball was held at 3678 Chestnut Lane, Columbus, Ohio, on February 24, 2006.
- 17) The sports Eli plays are football, basketball, and baseball.
- 18) To save money, Jean decided to get a second job.
- 19) The girls went to the fashion show but did not purchase any of the clothes. NONE
- 20) The girls went to the fashion show, but they did not purchase any of the clothes.

Commas 1-5  
Mixed Practice

Directions: Place commas and semicolons where they are needed.

- 1) He is the teacher here isn't he?
  - 2) To lose weight make sure to eat only when you are hungry.
  - 3) On Monday May 15 1996 they tied the knot!
  - 4) Many doctors studied that patient's case however there was no consensus on how to proceed.
  - 5) John Locke a political philosopher said all people are born free equal and independent.
  - 6) My friend Peter Carlton speaks three languages he's learning a fourth.
  - 7) My son likes snowboarding swimming and playing soccer.
  - 8) The next orientation is Thursday November 22 2006 at the FVTC GOAL lab.
  - 9) Silk is an amazing cloth but it's not always easy to clean.
  - 10) Well no I wasn't going to spend that much money on a movie.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) When I forget a birthday I usually find a humorous belated birthday card.
  - 12) They were funny entertaining characters.
  - 13) Their usual answer while expected was unsatisfactory.
  - 14) Laura read the part for the play very well she was a natural for that role.
  - 15) We worked very hard at completing the project but we fell behind at the end.
  - 16) There were 2345611 boxes shipped overseas.
  - 17) John asked "May I go to the library?"
  - 18) Snowflakes sparkled in the air winter brought its beauty.
  - 19) She was an experienced kind child-care provider.
  - 20) Tom did you say you will graduate this year or will you graduate early next year?



Commas 1- 5 KEY  
Mixed Practice

Directions: Place commas and semicolons where they are needed.

- 1) He is the teacher here, isn't he?
  - 2) To lose weight, make sure to eat only when you are hungry.
  - 3) On Monday, May 15, 1996, they tied the knot!
  - 4) Many doctors studied that patient's case; however, there was no consensus on how to proceed.
  - 5) John Locke, a political philosopher, said, "All people are born free, equal, and independent."
  - 6) My friend, Peter Carlton, speaks three languages; he's learning a fourth.
  - 7) My son likes snowboarding, swimming, and playing soccer.
  - 8) The next orientation is Thursday, November 22, 2006, at the FVTC GOAL lab.
  - 9) Silk is an amazing cloth, but it's not always easy to clean.
  - 10) Well, no, I wasn't going to spend that much money on a movie.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) When I forget a birthday, I usually find a humorous belated birthday card.
  - 12) They were funny, entertaining characters.
  - 13) Their usual answer, while expected, was unsatisfactory.
  - 14) Laura read the part for the play very well; she was a natural for that role.
  - 15) We worked very hard at completing the project, but we fell behind at the end.
  - 16) There were 2,345,611 boxes shipped overseas.
  - 17) John asked, "May I go to the library?"
  - 18) Snowflakes sparkled in the air; winter brought its beauty.
  - 19) She was an experienced, kind child-care provider.
  - 20) Tom, did you say you will graduate this year, or will you graduate early next year?

## Commas 1-6

Directions: Insert commas where they are needed in these sentences. If no commas are needed, write NONE.

Example:	I like cake cookies and pie at Thanksgiving. I like cake, cookies, and pie at Thanksgiving.
----------	--

- 1) Please add Grace Storm 123 First Street Menasha WI 53554 to your mailing list.
  - 2) I was born in January 1980 on a ranch in Houston Texas.
  - 3) Do you know Fred that you are amazing?
  - 4) I received a check for \$32567 in the mail!
  - 5) Don't use that dirty musty old rag!
  - 6) My friend Alberto is a magician.
  - 7) In Aspen or Denver Colorado Damon was born in June 1998.
  - 8) December 17 2005 was a great day in his life.
  - 9) His sister Marta Rios would like a yellow Jaguar for her birthday.
  - 10) Please tell me Marco if you can drive tonight.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) She was 21 on Saturday June 3 2007 and had a big party.
  - 12) Did you know Harry that we are related?
  - 13) Please send the check to Mary Adams 345 Good Drive Madison WI 53714 before it's too late.
  - 14) The twins Adison and Cameron are very cute.
  - 15) Sometime in April 2009 the building will be finished.
  - 16) My cousin Choua is training to be a welder.
  - 17) Dmitri said he had to finish his laundry read a chapter for sociology and drive his sister to work.
  - 18) My cat Shu is part Siamese.
  - 19) I hate working in this crowded dingy office.
  - 20) The population of Appleton Wisconsin has risen to nearly 80000 people.

◆ Check your work.

## Commas 1-6

Directions: Insert commas where they are needed in these sentences. If no commas are needed, write **NONE**.

Example: I like cake cookies and pie at Thanksgiving. I like cake, cookies, and pie at Thanksgiving.
---

1) Please add Grace Storm, 123 First Street, Menasha, WI 53554, to your mailing list.

2) I was born in January 1980 on a ranch in Houston, Texas.

3) Do you know, Fred, that you are amazing?

4) I received a check for \$32,567 in the mail!

5) Don't use that dirty, musty old rag!

6) My friend Alberto is a magician. **NONE**

7) In Aspen or Denver, Colorado, Damon was born in June 1998.

8) December 17, 2005, was a great day in his life.

9) His sister, Marta Rios, would like a yellow Jaguar for her birthday.

10) Please tell me, Marco, if you can drive tonight.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) She was 21 on Saturday, June 2, 2007, and had a big party.

12) Did you know, Harry, that we are related?

13) Please send the check to Mary Adams, 345 Good Drive, Madison, WI 53714, before it's too late.

14) The twins, Adison and Cameron, are very cute.

15) Sometime in April 2009 the building will be finished. **NONE**

16) My cousin Choua is training to be a welder. **NONE**

17) Dmitri said he had to finish his laundry, read a chapter for sociology, and drive his sister to work.

18) My cat Shu is part Siamese. **NONE**

19) I hate working in this crowded, dingy office.

20) The population of Appleton, Wisconsin, has risen to nearly 80,000 people.

Commas 1-7  
"FAN BOYS" Connectors

Directions: Add an appropriate coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS) and place commas where they are needed. Write *correct* if changes are not needed.

Example: That is a very large tomato. Its color is a beautiful red.  
That is a very large tomato, and its color is a beautiful red.

For  
And  
Nor  
  
But  
Or  
Yet  
So

- 1) Trees line the boulevard they are also along the sidewalks downtown.
  - 2) Trevor loves dogs he hates cats.
  - 3) Wisconsin has many changes of weather today it is snowing in April.
  - 4) We need some rain the flowers need moisture.
  - 5) Karen does not like to fly does she like to ride the bus.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) It's the best place to catch fish its hard to get a boat launched there.
  - 7) We need a new clothes washer the dryer is still working fine.
  - 8) Are Liam and Hilary getting married in June are they waiting until September?
  - 9) The grocery store has fresh pineapples on sale the bananas are still expensive.
  - 10) A volcano might become active after being silent for many years its rumblings can be felt for miles.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My cat's favorite pastime is napping in the sun she likes to be brushed.
  - 12) Many people enjoy sushi I am not one of them.
  - 13) I ordered a book on the Internet it arrived only three days later.
  - 14) My favorite way to relax is by reading I also enjoy taking a walk.
  - 15) Do you feel confident with comma rules do you want more practice exercises?
- ◆ Check your work.

Commas 1-7  
"FAN BOYS" Connectors

Directions: Add an appropriate coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS) and place commas where they are needed. Write *correct* if changes are not needed.

Example: That is a very large tomato. Its color is a beautiful red.  
That is a very large tomato, and its color is a beautiful red.

For  
And  
Nor  
  
But  
Or  
Yet  
So

- 1) Trees line the boulevard, and/but/yet they are also along the sidewalks downtown.
- 2) Trevor loves dogs, and/but he hates cats.
- 3) Wisconsin has many changes of weather, and/so today it is snowing in April.
- 4) We need some rain, and/for the flowers need moisture.
- 5) Karen does not like to fly, nor does she like to ride the bus.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) It's the best place to catch fish, but/yet its hard to get a boat launched there.
- 7) We need a new clothes washer, but/yet the dryer is still working fine.
- 8) Are Liam and Hilary getting married in June, or are they waiting until September?
- 9) The grocery store has fresh pineapples on sale, and/but/yet the bananas are still expensive.
- 10) A volcano might become active after being silent for many years, and its rumblings can be felt for miles.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My cat's favorite pastime is napping in the sun, and she likes to be brushed.
- 12) Many people enjoy sushi, but/yet I am not one of them.
- 13) I ordered a book on the Internet, and/so it arrived only three days later.
- 14) My favorite way to relax is by reading, and/but/yet I also enjoy taking a walk.
- 15) Do you feel confident with comma rules, or do you want more practice exercises?
- ◆ Check your work.

Commas 2-1  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 12-15)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	By the way will you be at the class reunion in July? By the way, will you be at the class reunion in July?
----------	---

- 1) No the game will not be played on Friday.
- 2) Besides the CD was not yours anyway.
- 3) Oh did you get yourself into trouble now?
- 4) The mail by the way will be late today.
- 5) Therefore always do the very best you can everyday.
- 6) The young horse needless to say was out of control.
- 7) To save money will always be difficult for me.
- 8) Actually John is much faster than Evan.
- 9) In my opinion the students from FVTC are the friendliest.
- 10) Daydreaming can be a good thing.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Obviously I will never do that again!
- 12) Christmas which is my favorite holiday will be spent in Florida this year.
- 13) Yes our product is the very best on the market.
- 14) We are sending you the price list that you requested.
- 15) Inside the girls were having a tea party.
- 16) It is a fact for example that we all learn from experience.
- 17) This battle I believe will decide the winner of the war.
- 18) I know that you will enjoy the movie.
- 19) Ruth what are you doing on Saturday evening?
- 20) Buying a Mazda Ford or Toyota will be a big mistake.
- ◆ Check your work.

Commas 2-1 - KEY  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 12-15)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	By the way will you be at the class reunion in July? By the way, will you be at the class reunion in July?
----------	---

- 1) No, the game will not be played on Friday.
- 2) Besides, the CD was not yours anyway.
- 3) Oh, did you get yourself into trouble now?
- 4) The mail, by the way, will be late today.
- 5) Therefore, always do the very best you can everyday.
- 6) The young horse, needless to say, was out of control.
- 7) To save money will always be difficult for me. Correct
- 8) Actually, John is much faster than Evan.
- 9) In my opinion, the students from FVTC are the friendliest.
- 10) Daydreaming can be a good thing. Correct
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Obviously, I will never do that again!
- 12) Christmas, which is my favorite holiday, will be spent in Florida this year.
- 13) Yes, our product is the very best on the market.
- 14) We are sending you the price list that you requested. Correct
- 15) Inside, the girls were having a tea party.
- 16) It is a fact, for example, that we all learn from experience.
- 17) This battle, I believe, will decide the winner of the war.
- 18) I know that you will enjoy the movie. Correct
- 19) Ruth, what are you doing on Saturday evening?
- 20) Buying a Mazda, Ford, or Toyota will be a big mistake.

## Commas 2-2

(Grammar for Writing – Mixed Practice, includes some of Commas 1)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	In my opinion that was the best book I ever read. In my opinion, that was the best book I ever read.
----------	---

- 1) However you can really help me solve this puzzle.
- 2) Perhaps Emily the book was too hard for you to read.
- 3) The ski trip at any rate was worth the wait at the airport.
- 4) On the other hand many people will go to the play at the Grand Opera House.
- 5) My you have really grown taller over the summer.
- 6) Consequently Debbie will never make it to the Olympics.
- 7) Underline the subject circle the verb and cross out the preposition.
- 8) Pens that leak are very messy.
- 9) Sam purchased a new Lexus which he has always wanted.
- 10) The boy who won the chess game was very happy.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) By all means please take as many pencils as you need.
- 12) The final plan I believe is the best one to use.
- 13) Rosa Parks who fought for freedom for her people will long be remembered.
- 14) The geese it seems continue to invade the parks.
- 15) Finding my car keys took all morning.
- 16) Well yes I do want to attend the seminar on investing money.
- 17) For example it is a fact that television has some educational programs.
- 18) B. D. Jackson who speaks two languages is moving to the United States.
- 19) The new gym I think will have a large impact on the basketball teams.
- 20) Actually Jeff has never had a problem with algebra or geometry.

◆ Check your work.



## Commas 2-2 KEY

(Grammar for Writing – Mixed Practice, includes some of Commas 1)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	In my opinion that was the best book I ever read. In my opinion, that was the best book I ever read.
----------	---

- 1) However, you can really help me solve this puzzle.
- 2) Perhaps, Emily, the book was too hard for you to read.
- 3) The ski trip, at any rate, was worth the wait at the airport.
- 4) On the other hand, many people will go to the play at the Grand Opera House.
- 5) My, you have really grown taller over the summer.
- 6) Consequently, Debbie will never make it to the Olympics.
- 7) Underline the subject, circle the verb, and cross out the preposition.
- 8) Pens that leak are very messy. Correct
- 9) Sam purchased a new Lexus, which he has always wanted.
- 10) The boy who won the chess game was very happy. Correct
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) By all means, please take as many pencils as you need.
- 12) The final plan, I believe, is the best one to use.
- 13) Rosa Parks, who fought for freedom for her people, will long be remembered.
- 14) The geese, it seems, continue to invade the parks.
- 15) Finding my car keys took all morning. Correct
- 16) Well, yes, I do want to attend the seminar on investing money.
- 17) For example, it is a fact that television has some educational programs.
- 18) B. D. Jackson, who speaks two languages, is moving to the United States.
- 19) The new gym, I think, will have a large impact on the basketball teams.
- 20) Actually, Jeff has never had a problem with algebra or geometry.

Commas 2-3  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 12-17)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example: Oh I know what you mean. Oh, I know what you mean.
--

- 1) Saving for a house can be very difficult.
  - 2) In other words you are doing it yourself.
  - 3) Well yes I had thought of going.
  - 4) Lately I haven't been getting enough sleep.
  - 5) Saving for a house I have been putting all my overtime in the bank.
  - 6) My favorite Persian cat which has long white fur likes to sleep on the window seat.
  - 7) Spring it seems is never going to get here.
  - 8) The math class that meets at 8 a.m. is having a test next Friday.
  - 9) In my opinion we need to stop using gasoline.
  - 10) Jousa who is a wonderful cook brought her special recipe to the picnic.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Actually I enjoy March basketball.
  - 12) Getting to work can be a challenge on the Chicago freeways.
  - 13) Getting to work late I was called into the office.
  - 14) Mariana who works in my department is always out sick.
  - 15) My what big eyes you have!
  - 16) Badger hockey of course is the best in the country.
  - 17) Oh my what big teeth you have!
  - 18) That is it seems all the better to scare you.
  - 19) My laptop computer which I purchased via the Internet seems to have a mind of its own.
  - 20) A computer that is truly portable sometimes is not the most reliable.

◆ Check your work.

Commas 2-3 KEY  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 12-17)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example: Oh I know what you mean. Oh, I know what you mean.
--

- 1) Saving for a house can be very difficult. Correct
- 2) In other words, you are doing it yourself.
- 3) Well, yes, I had thought of going.
- 4) Lately, I haven't been getting enough sleep.
- 5) Saving for a house, I have been putting all my overtime in the bank.
- 6) My favorite Persian cat, which has long white fur, likes to sleep on the window seat.
- 7) Spring, it seems, is never going to get here.
- 8) The math class that meets at 8 a.m. is having a test next Friday. Correct
- 9) In my opinion, we need to stop using gasoline.
- 10) Jousa, who is a wonderful cook, brought her special recipe to the picnic.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Actually, I enjoy March basketball.
- 12) Getting to work can be a challenge on the Chicago freeways. Correct
- 13) Getting to work late, I was called into the office.
- 14) Mariana, who works in my department, is always out sick.
- 15) My, what big eyes you have!
- 16) Badger hockey, of course, is the best in the country.
- 17) Oh, my, what big teeth you have!
- 18) That is, it seems, all the better to scare you.
- 19) My laptop computer, which I purchased via the Internet, seems to have a mind of its own.
- 20) A computer that is truly portable sometimes is not the most reliable. Correct

Commas 2-4  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 16-17)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example: I love to decorate for Halloween which is my favorite holiday.

I love to decorate for Halloween, which is my favorite holiday.

- 1) My brother who is from Malta is coming home today.
- 2) My brother Chris who lives in Malta is coming home.
- 3) The lecture that was given this morning was very informative.
- 4) Birches which are my favorite trees are beautiful in the sunlight.
- 5) Sam loves to eat apple pie which is my favorite too.
- 6) The genre that she loves to read is nonfiction.
- 7) My grandmother whom I never knew was from Sweden.
- 8) The car that I've always wanted was sold yesterday.
- 9) The statue of David which is one of the world's most beautiful is awe-inspiring.
- 10) Summer which brings good humor in people is just around the corner.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

(Review of Comma Rules 12-17.)

- 11) Students I know like to have extended vacations from classes.
- 12) The recipe that my son created is wonderful.
- 13) The children who go to nursery school seem better prepared for kindergarten.
- 14) Thao be sure to stop for groceries on your way home.
- 15) People who have children know what tired feels like!
- 16) Dr. Phil who is on everyday is very popular.
- 17) Time nevertheless stops for no one.
- 18) Pepperoni pizza a tasty treat makes a great snack.
- 19) Stuffing a turkey is not as hard as it seems.
- 20) Mario who has three children knows what tired feels like!

◆ Check your work.

Commas 2-4 KEY  
(Grammar for Writing – Comma Rules 16-17)

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	I love to decorate for Halloween which is my favorite holiday. I love to decorate for Halloween, which is my favorite holiday.
----------	---

- 1) My brother, who is from Malta, is coming home today.
- 2) My brother Chris, who lives in Malta, is coming home.
- 3) The lecture that was given this morning was very informative. Correct
- 4) Birches, which are my favorite trees, are beautiful in the sunlight.
- 5) Sam loves to eat apple pie, which is my favorite too.
- 6) The genre that she loves to read is nonfiction. Correct
- 7) My grandmother, whom I never knew, was from Sweden.
- 8) The car that I've always wanted was sold yesterday. Correct
- 9) The statue of David, which is one of the world's most beautiful, is awe-inspiring.
- 10) Summer, which brings good humor in people, is just around the corner.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

(Review of Comma Rules 12-17.)

- 11) Students, I know, like to have extended vacations from classes.
- 12) The recipe that my son created is wonderful. Correct
- 13) The children who go to nursery school seem better prepared for kindergarten. Correct
- 14) Thao, be sure to stop for groceries on your way home.
- 15) People who have children know what tired feels like! Correct
- 16) Dr. Phil, who is on everyday, is very popular.
- 17) Time, nevertheless, stops for no one.
- 18) Pepperoni pizza, a tasty treat, makes a great snack.
- 19) Stuffing a turkey is not as hard as it seems. Correct
- 20) Mario, who has three children, knows what tired feels like!

### Commas 2-5 Mixed

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example: Thomas Edison who was a great inventor is remembered for several of the gadgets he created.

Thomas Edison, who was a great inventor, is remembered for several of the gadgets he created.

- 1) Well I'd like to have two of them but I can't afford both.
  - 2) No matter what you've got to move on with your life.
  - 3) According to the doctor Juan is scheduled for a routine procedure.
  - 4) To break the seal required a jackknife.
  - 5) To break the seal I needed to use a jackknife.
  - 6) Dancing needless to say is great exercise.
  - 7) I'm moving to Washington D.C. which is where I was born.
  - 8) The friend who lives in Chicago is the one I'm visiting.
  - 9) Ten years for example is a long time to be dating!
  - 10) Dad who enjoys his coffee is being limited to two cups.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Dogs that bite need to be kept tied up or in kennels.
  - 12) Usually we go to a "slow-food" restaurant.
  - 13) Don't you think Son that you had better get your homework done?
  - 14) Living their dream became tedious and boring.
  - 15) Living their dream they spent every weekend maintaining and repairing their cottage.
  - 16) To maintain worker morale be sure to recognize employees for outstanding effort.
  - 17) Therefore begin your new life and start exercising!
  - 18) I like hip-hop; on the other hand I like jazz too.
  - 19) Zachary will you help me unload the dresser?
  - 20) My favorite dress which has to be dry-cleaned got splattered with mud.

### Commas 2-5 Mixed

Directions: Place commas where they are needed. Some sentences will be correct as they are written with no commas needed. Write CORRECT if the sentence needs no commas.

Example:	Thomas Edison who was a great inventor is remembered for several of the gadgets he created. Thomas Edison, who was a great inventor, is remembered for several of the gadgets he created.
----------	--

- 1) Well, I'd like to have two of them, but I can't afford both.
- 2) No matter what, you've got to move on with your life.
- 3) According to the doctor, Juan is scheduled for a routine procedure.
- 4) To break the seal required a jackknife. correct
- 5) To break the seal, I needed to use a jackknife.
- 6) Dancing, needless to say, is great exercise.
- 7) I'm moving to Washington D.C., which is where I was born.
- 8) The friend who lives in Chicago is the one I'm visiting. correct
- 9) Ten years, for example, is a long time to be dating!
- 10) Dad, who enjoys his coffee, is being limited to two cups.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Dogs that bite need to be kept tied up or in kennels. correct
- 12) Usually, we go to a "slow-food" restaurant.
- 13) Don't you think, Son, that you had better get your homework done?
- 14) Living their dream became tedious and boring. correct
- 15) Living their dream, they spent every weekend maintaining and repairing their cottage.
- 16) To maintain worker morale, be sure to recognize employees for outstanding effort.
- 17) Therefore, begin your new life, and start exercising!
- 18) I like hip-hop; on the other hand, I like jazz too.
- 19) Zachary, will you help me unload the dresser?
- 20) My favorite dress, which has to be dry-cleaned, got splattered with mud.

## COMMA INFORMATION SHEET

1. Between two *sentences*, use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (a short connecting word\*).

It is cold outside, so I am going inside.

Wendy went to Colorado, but Rob went to Utah.

\*Remember that the first letters of the coordinating conjunctions spell out the words, “*fan boys*”:

<b>F</b> or	<b>B</b> ut
<b>A</b> nd	<b>O</b> r
<b>N</b> or	<b>Y</b> et
	<b>S</b> o

2. Use commas to separate items in a series (list of 3 or more items). Do not use a comma after the last item.

Carrots, green beans, and spinach are rich in nutrients.

We had to dust the house, vacuum the floor, and wash the dishes.

3. Use a comma after introductory interjections (words like *well, yes, no, etc.*)

Well, I did like her speech. No, I'm not going to be late.

Oh, yes, I will go to the game with you.

4. Use a comma after introductory groups of words (check to be sure that a complete sentence follows).

To hang the picture, you must first measure the wall.

When I am late for class, I feel terrible.

To avoid being late, allow thirty minutes for travel time.

5. Use a comma between adjectives if they can be reversed or if they sound OK with *and* between them.

It was a cold, rainy day. (It was a rainy and cold day. It was a rainy, cold day.)

The GOAL Lab is a busy, challenging place. (...busy and challenging....)

6. Leave out the comma between adjectives if they *cannot* be reversed.

I like the long wooden spoon. (*NOT* wooden long...)

...expensive foreign car (*NOT* expensive and foreign)

It was an ugly <sup>N-adj</sup> leisure suit.

I passed a hard math test.

7. Use a comma after longer connecting words that come between sentences.

It is cold outside; therefore, I will go inside.

The rain continued for days. However, there was no major flooding.



8. Use two commas to set off (surround) interrupters in the middle of sentences.

Popsicles, it seems, melt quickly in the sun.  
This sentence, for example, illustrates rule eight.

9. Use commas to set off, or surround, appositives (when there are *two or more* words that add information about the noun that precedes it).

My favorite teacher, Mrs. Patterson, is interesting and funny.  
Chicago, where I was born, is in Illinois.

NOTE: Do *not* use commas with a one-word appositive that is a proper noun.  
My best friend Thomas is a quiet person.

10. Use commas to set off (surround) the names of people and their titles or credentials when they come in a sentence.

John Roberts, M.D.                      Katie Warren, D.D.S.  
Robert Austin, Ph.D., named his son Robert Austin, Jr.

11 Short prepositional phrases at the beginning of a sentence do not require a comma; it is optional. Phrases of four or more words *DO* require a comma.

After work I like to have some quiet time to myself. In the morning we often look tired.

*BUT:* In the summer after dark, we liked to play hide and seek.

12. Use commas to set off the person being spoken to (*direct address*).

Hey, Pat, why didn't you call earlier?                      Please help me, Thao.

13. Use commas to set off speakers from their exact words

Ms. Brewer asked, "When will you complete the project?"      "On Monday," I replied.  
"For the remainder of the year," she continued, "we must watch our timelines."

*BUT:* She asked when I would finish the work. (*Indirect quotes:* no quotation marks, no commas)

## COMMA SUMMARY

RULES	EXAMPLES
<p><b>1. Use commas between items in a SERIES.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Words</li> <li>b. Phrases</li> <li>c. Clauses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Please check the reports, correspondence, and minutes from last month’s meeting.</li> <li>b. Please study the text, do the exercises, and complete your personal profile before our next class.</li> <li>c. We should ask which reports we should keep, where we could store them, and why they should be kept.</li> </ul>
<p><b>2. Use commas with COORDINATE elements.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compound sentences with a coordinating conjunction (<i>for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so</i>)</li> <li>b. Compound sentences after a semicolon using connectors such as <i>therefore, however, thus</i>, etc.</li> <li>c. Adjectives (only if reversible or OK with <i>and</i>)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. You should read the directions in advance, and you must check the smoke detectors on a regular basis.</li> <li>b. Some registrants did not attend all sessions; however, all participants were eligible for awards.</li> <li>c. They are qualified, capable employees.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3. Use commas after INTRODUCTORY elements.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Nouns of direct address</li> <li>b. Interjections (<i>no, oh, well, my</i>, etc.)</li> <li>c. Prepositional phrases of four or more words</li> <li>d. Participial words or phrases</li> <li>e. Infinitive phrases (<i>to</i> + a verb)</li> <li>f. Subordinate clauses (<i>when, if, after, since</i>, etc.)</li> <li>g. Absolutes</li> <li>h. Transitional words or phrases (<i>in summary, first of all, in conclusion</i>, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Mai, these papers may now be processed.</li> <li>b. Yes, I learned a great deal at the workshop.</li> <li>c. In a burst of regret, he apologized for the accident.</li> <li>d. Identifying the new viruses, you should also work to determine the source.</li> <li>e. To maintain player morale, be sure to commend team members for outstanding effort.</li> <li>f. After he searched for the letter, Harry admitted that he probably shredded it last week.</li> <li>g. Nails scraping against frozen glass, the squirrel watched us at the dinner table.</li> <li>h. Second, determine which goals are reasonable. In conclusion, your success depends on you.</li> </ul>
<p><b>4. Use commas to set off INTERRUPTING elements.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Nouns of direct address</li> <li>b. Appositives</li> <li>c. Contrasting elements</li> <li>d. Describing (not essential) phrases</li> <li>e. Describing (not essential) clauses</li> <li>f. Absolutes</li> <li>g. Parenthetical expressions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. At other times , Ms. Washington, you should ask for help. Please watch the monitor, Thor.</li> <li>b. The computer, a newer model, has many advantages.</li> <li>c. We asked about the scanner, not the printer.</li> <li>d. Our primary objectives, clarified after widespread discussion, will be published next month.</li> <li>e. Their usual advice, while helpful in other situations, has actually caused more problems for our company.</li> <li>f. C. M. Franklin, her eyes still focused on the door, managed to greet us enthusiastically.</li> <li>g. The projections, unfortunately, cannot be accurate. We should wait for further assistance, I think.</li> </ul>
<p><b>5. Use commas between STANDARD elements.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. After parts of addresses in sentences (but no comma after the state when the ZIP code follows)</li> <li>b. After parts of most dates in a sentence (no comma between month and year without the day)</li> <li>c. To set off the direct words of a speaker</li> <li>d. In a business letter after the closing</li> <li>e. In a personal letter after the opening and closing</li> <li>f. After names when a title or academic degree follows</li> <li>g. In an alphabetic listing of names</li> <li>h. In the change of a statement into a question</li> <li>i. In numbers of more than four digits</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Until June 1972, they lived at 1000 North Meade St., Appleton, WI 54911. However, he accepted an internship in Portland, Oregon, and now works there.</li> <li>b. On Saturday, June 10, 2000, they will be married.</li> <li>c. Maria asked, “Why did you think it was May 1976?” “It is not likely,” he said, “to flood again this year.”</li> <li>d. Sincerely yours,</li> <li>e. Dear Grandma, / With love,</li> <li>f. Yes, T.J. Smith, Jr., is the first son of T.J. Smith, M.D.</li> <li>g. File <i>Braun, Frederik</i>, before <i>Yang, Moua</i>.</li> <li>h. She is the manager there, isn’t she?</li> <li>i. 70,422 / 135,401,132</li> </ul>



## Comparative/Superlative Modifiers 1

Directions: Write the comparative or superlative form of the modifier (adjective or adverb) to show the correct comparison between two or more items.

Example:	My father is the _____ person to buy a gift for. (hard)
	My father is the <u>hardest</u> person to buy a gift for.

- 1) My sister's handwriting is \_\_\_\_\_ than mine. (neat)
- 2) Of the three, Tomás is the \_\_\_\_\_ of his brothers. (serious)
- 3) This is the \_\_\_\_\_ wedding I have ever attended. (merry)
- 4) Oceans are \_\_\_\_\_ than seas. (large)
- 5) My computer is in \_\_\_\_\_ condition than when I took it in for repairs. (bad)
- 6) These accountants are \_\_\_\_\_ than those at Ty's Tax Service.  
(conscientious)
- 7) Of all my classes, I have the \_\_\_\_\_ with math. (difficulty)
- 8) Parents must speak \_\_\_\_\_ when discussing serious issues. (firm)
- 9) On a globe Antarctica is the continent that is the \_\_\_\_\_ south. (far)
- 10) Your paragraph is written \_\_\_\_\_ than mine. (clear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) This pizza crust is \_\_\_\_\_ than the last one. (thin)
- 12) My back feels \_\_\_\_\_ today than it did yesterday. (good)
- 13) The Jewelry Department sent the manager the \_\_\_\_\_ report of all. (clear)
- 14) The sale was \_\_\_\_\_ lost due to her rude behavior. (likely)
- 15) Spring seems to be arriving \_\_\_\_\_ this year. (soon)
- 16) A turtle is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ creatures. (slow)
- 17) Have you ever driven in a \_\_\_\_\_ snowstorm? (blinding)
- 18) The test results are sent \_\_\_\_\_ by that lab. (quick)
- 19) Of all weather conditions, people seem to drive \_\_\_\_\_ on ice.  
(careful)
- 20) Our flowers were delivered the \_\_\_\_\_ of all. (early)

◆ Check your work.

## Comparative/Superlative Modifiers 1 - KEY

Directions: Write the comparative or superlative form of the modifier (adjective or adverb) to show the correct comparison between two or more items.

Example: My father is the \_\_\_\_\_ person to buy a gift for. (hard)  
My father is the hardest person to buy a gift for.

- 1) My sister's handwriting is neater than mine. (neat)
- 2) Of the three, Tomás is the most serious of his brothers. (serious)
- 3) This is the merriest wedding I have ever attended. (merry)
- 4) Oceans are larger than seas. (large)
- 5) My computer is in worse condition than when I took it in for repairs. (bad)
- 6) These accountants are more conscientious than those at Ty's Tax Service. (conscientious)
- 7) Of all my classes, I have the most difficulty with math. (difficulty)
- 8) Parents must speak most firmly when discussing serious issues. (firm)
- 9) On a globe Antarctica is the continent that is the farthest south. (far)
- 10) Your paragraph is written more clearly than mine. (clear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) This pizza crust is thinner than the last one. (thin)
- 12) My back feels better today than it did yesterday. (good)
- 13) The Jewelry Department sent the manager the clearest report of all. (clear)
- 14) The sale was most likely lost due to her rude behavior. (likely)
- 15) Spring seems to be arriving sooner this year. (soon)
- 16) A turtle is one of the slowest creatures. (slow)
- 17) Have you ever driven in a more blinding snowstorm? (blinding)
- 18) The test results are sent more quickly by that lab. (quick) *[This could be interpreted as the quicker of two labs = "more quickly" OR quickest of several = "most quickly"]*
- 19) Of all weather conditions, people seem to drive most carefully on ice. (careful)
- 20) Our flowers were delivered the earliest of all. (early)

### Comparative/Superlative Modifiers 2

Directions: Write the comparative or superlative form of the modifier (adjective or adverb) to show the correct comparison between two or more items.

Example: Gifts of chocolate for women are \_\_\_\_\_ of all on Valentine's Day. (popular)  
Gifts of chocolate for women are most popular of all on Valentine's Day.

- 1) I speak \_\_\_\_\_ of all when speaking to my grandmother. (distinct)
- 2) Of all the highways, Interstate 39 is the \_\_\_\_\_. (smooth)
- 3) This is the \_\_\_\_\_ music I have ever heard. (lively)
- 4) Do whales swim \_\_\_\_\_ than sea lions? (far)
- 5) This snowstorm is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ we have ever had in February. (bad)
- 6) Juan prepares \_\_\_\_\_ for tests than for daily discussions. (careful)
- 7) Of all the days this week, today is the \_\_\_\_\_. (warm)
- 8) Baking dishes clean \_\_\_\_\_ if they are soaked in warm water. (easy)
- 9) On a globe the North Pole is the \_\_\_\_\_ north. (far)
- 10) These sentences are written \_\_\_\_\_ than mine. (clear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) These cookies are \_\_\_\_\_ than the last ones. (chewy)
- 12) My back feels \_\_\_\_\_ today than it did yesterday. (bad)
- 13) This doctor gave the patient the \_\_\_\_\_ information of all. (clear)
- 14) Many lost sales are \_\_\_\_\_ due to poor customer service. (likely)
- 15) Spring seems to be \_\_\_\_\_ this year. (late)
- 16) A cheetah is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ creatures. (fast)
- 17) Have you ever eaten in a \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant? (dirty)
- 18) Lab test results are sent \_\_\_\_\_ to the Emergency Room than to a clinic. (quick)
- 19) Of all vacation spots, people choose Hawaii \_\_\_\_\_. (frequent)
- 20) Of all the commuter trains, the Bombardier is \_\_\_\_\_. (slow)

◆ Check your work.

### Comparative/Superlative Modifiers 3 - KEY

Directions: Write the comparative or superlative form of the modifier (adjective or adverb) to show the correct comparison between two or more items.

Example: Gifts of chocolate for women are \_\_\_\_\_ of all on Valentine's Day. (popular)  
Gifts of chocolate for women are most popular of all on Valentine's Day.

- 1) I speak most distinctly of all when speaking to my grandmother. (distinct)
- 2) Of all the highways, Interstate 39 is the smoothest. (smooth)
- 3) This is the liveliest music I have ever heard. (lively)
- 4) Do whales swim farther than sea lions? (far)
- 5) This snowstorm is one of the worst we have ever had in February. (bad)
- 6) Juan prepares more carefully for tests than for daily discussions. (careful)
- 7) Of all the days this week, today is the warmest. (warm)
- 8) Baking dishes clean more easily if they are soaked in warm water. (easy)
- 9) On a globe the North Pole is the farthest north. (far)
- 10) These sentences are written more clearly than mine. (clear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) These cookies are chewier than the last ones. (chewy)
- 12) My back feels worse today than it did yesterday. (bad)
- 13) This doctor gave the patient the clearest information of all. (clear)
- 14) Many lost sales are most likely due to poor customer service. (likely)
- 15) Spring seems to be later this year. (late)
- 16) A cheetah is one of the fastest creatures. (fast)
- 17) Have you ever eaten in a dirtier restaurant? (dirty)
- 18) Lab test results are sent more quickly to the Emergency Room than to a clinic. (quick)
- 19) Of all vacation spots, people choose Hawaii most frequently. (frequent)
- 20) Of all the commuter trains, the Bombardier is slowest. (slow)

## Compound & Reflexive Pronouns (Pronouns 3)

I. Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

Example: ( She, Her ) and ( he, him ) have been seeing a counselor.

- 1) ( They, Them ) and ( we, us ) have selected a project to work on together.
- 2) Josh and ( I, me ) work well together.
- 3) ( We, Us ) and ( they, them ) are distant relatives.
- 4) Just between you and ( I, me ), I think he takes very long breaks.
- 5) Either the loggers or ( they, them ) will sleep in the bunk house.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

II. Directions: a. Correct the pronouns in the incorrect sentences.

b. Write **Correct** if there is no error.

Example: James protects the other employees and ~~we~~ from unnecessary interruptions. **us**

- 6) Him and his motorcycle made me nervous.
- 7) An additional work assignment was given to Arnold and I.
- 8) Every Christmas, Edward's grandmother knits beautiful sweaters for his sister and he.
- 9) The instructor showed both Hiroshi and them the answers.
- 10) With you and she by my side, I won't be afraid.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

III. Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

Example: We gave ( us, ourselves ) a pat on the back for a job well done.

- 11) He painted the kitchen ( hisself, himself ).
- 12) Janet and Tanya drove home ( theirselves, themselves ).
- 13) Their sons pay for the insurance ( theirselves, themselves ).
- 14) She and ( I, myself ) were pleased to speak at your meeting.
- 15) Jeff gave his report to ( us, ourselves ).

◆ Check your work.



## Compound & Reflexive Pronouns 2 - KEY

I. Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

Example: ( She, Her ) and ( he, him ) have been seeing a counselor.

- 1) ( They, Them ) and ( we, us ) have selected a project to work on together.
- 2) Josh and ( I, me ) work well together.
- 3) ( We, Us ) and ( they, them ) are distant relatives.
- 4) Just between you and ( I, me ), I think he takes very long breaks.
- 5) Either the loggers or ( they, them ) will sleep in the bunk house.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

II. Directions: a. Correct the pronouns in the incorrect sentences.

c. Write **Correct** if there is no error.

Example: James protects the other employees and ~~we~~ from unnecessary interruptions. **us**

- 6) ~~Him~~ and his motorcycle made me nervous. **He**
- 7) An additional work assignment was given to Arnold and ~~I~~. **me**
- 8) At Christmas, Edward's grandmother knits beautiful sweaters for his sister and ~~he~~. **him**
- 9) The instructor showed both Hiroshi and them the answers. **Correct**
- 10) With you and ~~she~~ by my side, I won't be afraid. **her**

◆ Stop here and check your work.

III. Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

Example: We gave ( us, ourselves ) a pat on the back for a job well done.

- 11) He painted the kitchen ( himself, himself ).
- 12) Janet and Tanya drove home ( themselves, themselves ).
- 13) Their sons pay for the insurance ( themselves, themselves ).
- 14) She and ( I, myself ) were pleased to speak at your meeting.
- 15) Jeff gave his report to ( us, ourselves ).

◆ Check your work

## Consistent Verb Tense 2

- Directions: A. Underline the verbs in the sentences below.  
B. Make any necessary changes if the verb tenses do not match.

Example:	(present) He often <u>gets</u> extra dressing when he	(past) <u>ordered</u> a salad.
	(present) He often <u>gets</u> extra dressing when he	(present) (both past) <u>orders</u> a salad. (OR <i>got...ordered</i> )

- 1) The boy down the street is happy when he will play with his new puppy.
  - 2) Marta was the best actress I ever see in the role of Evita.
  - 3) Juan always puts extra time in during the week so his weekends were free.
  - 4) We sat around the campfire and tell ghost stories.
  - 5) The bus stalled on the bridge, so I am late for work yesterday.
  - 6) The snow blew and the deer have a hard time finding food.
  - 7) When Evan sees me, he waves and said, " Hi."
- **Stop here and check your work.**
- 8) If you save all your pennies, soon they turned into dollars.
  - 9) Would you please turn at the corner and went left.
  - 10) I am making dinner and needed to add more spice.
  - 11) The letters from my Grandma arrive every Monday after she will mail them on Friday.
  - 12) George and Mary went fishing and catch several fish.
  - 13) Lor will make the bed, washed the floor, and goes to the grocery store.
  - 14) There were hundreds of mosquitoes when summer arrives.
  - 15) Can you help me with my work, so we finished early?

► **Check your work.**

## Consistent Verb Tense 2 - KEY

- Directions: A. Underline the verbs in the sentences below.  
B. Make any necessary changes if the verb tenses do not match.

Example:	(present)	(past)	
	He often <u>gets</u> extra dressing when he <u>ordered</u> a salad.		
	(present)	(present)	(both past)
	He often <u>gets</u> extra dressing when he <u>orders</u> a salad. (OR <u>got...ordered</u> )		

- 1) The boy down the street is happy when he will play with his new puppy. (*is, plays*)
- 2) Marta was the best actress I ever see in the role of Evita. (*was, saw*)
- 3) Juan always puts extra time in during the week so his weekends were free. (*puts, are*)
- 4) We sat around the campfire and tell ghost stories. (*sit, tell or sat, told*)
- 5) The bus stalled on the bridge, so I am late for work yesterday. (*stalled, was*)
- 6) The snow blew and the deer have a hard time finding food. (*blew, had or blows, have*)
- 7) When Evan sees me, he waves and said, "Hi." (*sees, waves, says or saw, waved, said*)
- **Stop here and check your work.**
- 8) If you save all your pennies, soon they turned into dollars. (*save, turn or saved, turned*)
- 9) Would you please turn at the corner and went left. (*turn, go*)
- 10) I am making dinner and needed to add more spice. (*am making, need or made, needed*)
- 11) The letters from my Grandma arrive every Monday after she will mail them on Friday. (*arrive, mails or arrived, mailed or will arrive, will mail*)
- 12) George and Mary went fishing and catch several fish. (*went, caught or go, catch*)
- 13) Lor will make the bed, washed the floor, and goes to the grocery store. (*will make, wash, go or makes, washes, goes or made, washed, went*)
- 14) There were hundreds of mosquitoes when summer arrives. (*were, arrived or are, arrives*)
- 15) Can you help me with my work, so we finished early? (*can help, finish/can finish or could help, could finish*)

► **If you have questions about your answers, ask your instructor.**

Consistent Verb Tense 3 - Mixed Practice  
(All simple tenses, including Past Perfect with "had")

- Directions:
- A. Underline the verbs in the sentences below.
  - B. Label the tense of each verb.
  - C. Make any necessary changes if the verb tenses do not match.
  - D. If the sentence is correct as written, write **CORRECT**.

Hint: Sentences **may be corrected in more than one way**.  
When one action happens before another, use the past perfect tense with "had."

Example 1:	( past )	I drove to school before my class	( past )	started.	Both past tense? Yes. But, this is still <b>incorrect</b> .
	( past perfect )	I <u>had driven</u> to school	( a time difference )	<b>before</b> my class	( past )
				<u>started</u> .	<b>Correct</b>
Example 2:	( present )	He often <u>gets</u> extra dressing when he	( past )	<u>ordered</u> a salad.	<b>Incorrect</b>
	( present )	He often <b>gets</b> extra dressing when he	( present )	<u>orders</u> a salad.	( both past )
				( OR <b>got...ordered</b> )	

- 1) Sam hates being the one who brought bad news .
  - 2) Sara sat down and reads the paper last night.
  - 3) After I pay my tuition, I hated to add a class.
  - 4) We were tired following the marathon that takes six hours.
  - 5) My car's repairs ran past 3:45 p.m., so I will be late to school yesterday.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) I drove to school before my class was canceled.
  - 7) When I saw a student I always say, "Hi."
  - 8) The snow blew and the squirrels have difficulty finding food.
  - 9) Please turn at the corner and went left.
  - 10) Tom saw the sale advertisement after he bought the grill.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Pa tried to sell his car unsuccessfully after he reads the poor reviews.
  - 12) Ly will need to find the flyer before they gone to the grocery store.
  - 13) There were problems with the order after it arrives.
  - 14) Leon adds the packaging, and we send the product.
  - 15) She was amazed at the effect storms had on her dog.

Consistent Verb Tense 3 - Mixed Practice - Key  
(All simple tenses, including Past Perfect with "had")

- 1) Sam <sup>(present)</sup> **hates** being the one who <sup>(present)</sup> **brings** bad news. ( or <sup>both past</sup> **hated / brought** )
- 2) Sara <sup>(past)</sup> **sat** down and <sup>(past)</sup> **read** the paper last night? ( or <sup>both present</sup> **sits / reads** )
- 3) *After* I <sup>(past perfect)</sup> **had paid** my tuition, I <sup>(past)</sup> **hated** to add a class. (*after* = a time difference )
- 4) We **were** tired following the marathon that <sup>(past)</sup> **took** six hours. ( or **are / takes** ; or **will be / will take** )
- 5) My car's repairs <sup>(past)</sup> **ran** past 3:45 P.M., so I <sup>(past)</sup> **was** late to school **yesterday**.  
( or **had run / was** ; or **will run / will be / today** or **will run / will be / tomorrow** )

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) I <sup>(past perfect)</sup> **had driven** to school before my class <sup>(past)</sup> **was** canceled. (*before* = a time difference )
- 7) When I <sup>(present)</sup> **see** a student I always <sup>(present)</sup> **say**, "Hi." ( or <sup>both past</sup> **saw / said** )
- 8) The snow <sup>(present)</sup> **blew** and the squirrels <sup>(present)</sup> **had** difficulty finding food. ( or <sup>both present</sup> **blows / have** )
- 9) Please <sup>(past)</sup> **turn** at the corner and **go** left.
- 10) Tom **saw** the sale advertisement after he <sup>(past perfect)</sup> **had bought** the grill. (*after* = a time difference )

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Pa <sup>(past)</sup> **tried** to sell his car unsuccessfully after he <sup>(past perfect)</sup> **had read** the poor reviews.
- 12) Ly <sup>(present)</sup> **needs** to find the flyer before they <sup>(present)</sup> **go** to the grocery store. ( or <sup>(past perfect/past)</sup> **had needed/went** )
- 13) There <sup>(past)</sup> **were** problems with the order after it <sup>(past perfect)</sup> **had arrived**.
- 14) Leon <sup>(past)</sup> **adds** the packaging, and we <sup>(past)</sup> **send** the product. **Correct** (past/past perfect)
- 15) She **was** amazed at the effect storms **had** on her dog. **Correct** ( or **was/had had** )

## CONSISTENT VERB TENSE 1

- Directions: A. Underline the verbs in the sentences below.  
B. Make any necessary changes if the verb tenses do not match.

Example:	(present)	(past)
	She usually <u>wakes</u> up early and <u>wanted</u> to go running.	
	(present)	(present)
	She usually <u>wakes</u> up early and <u>wants</u> to go running. (or <i>woke, wanted – past</i> )	

- 1) Whenever we go downtown, we stopped for ice cream.
- 2) If I went to the party, I can't get my homework done.
- 3) They call all of their classmates and invited them to come along.
- 4) I study on Friday, so I could go to the game on Saturday.
- 5) They never rode their bikes or walk so far in just one day.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) We make corrections on our tests and returned them to the instructor.
- 7) They went to the family reunion and see all of their cousins.
- 8) When you open a new account, the bank gave you a free checking account.
- 9) Tony drove his own car and brings all of his friends with him.
- 10) Our work begins, so we tried to remain motivated.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) I noticed the worm after I buy the apple. (*Be careful; this one is trickier than it looks!*)
- 12) When we camped in the Rockies, we see wildlife of all kinds.
- 13) When I went to Europe, I visit Rome, Paris, and Madrid.
- 14) Each morning, Pang brushes his teeth and combed his hair.
- 15) I clean the house today, so I could go to the movies tonight.
- ◆ Check your work.

## CONSISTENT VERB TENSE 1 – KEY

- Directions: A. Underline the verbs in the sentences below.  
B. Make any necessary changes if the verb tenses do not match.

Example:	(present)	(past)
	She usually <u>wakes</u> up early and	<u>wanted</u> to go running.
	(present)	(present)
	She usually <u>wakes</u> up early and	<u>wants</u> to go running. (or <i>woke, wanted – past</i> )

- 1) Whenever we go downtown, we stop for ice cream. (or *went...stopped*)
- 2) If I went to the party, I couldn't get my homework done. (or *go...can't*)
- 3) They called all of their classmates and invited them to come along. (or *call...invite*)
- 4) I study on Friday, so I can go to the game on Saturday. (or *studied...could go*)
- 5) They never ride their bikes or walk so far in just one day. (or *rode...walked*)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) We made corrections on our tests and returned them to the instructor. (or *make...return*)
- 7) They went to the family reunion and saw all of their cousins. (or *go...see*)
- 8) When you open a new account, the bank gives you a free checking account. (or *opened...gave*)
- 9) Tony drove his own car and brought all of his friends with him. (or *drives...brings*)
- 10) Our work began, so we tried to remain motivated. (or *begins...try*)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) I noticed the worm after I had bought the apple. (*had bought...because of the time element; one action happens before the other – see text, top of p. 9-2 & chart, p. 9-8, Past Perfect.*)
- 12) When we camped in the Rockies, we saw wildlife of all kinds. (or *camp...see*)
- 13) When I went to Europe, I visited Rome, Paris, and Madrid. (or *go...visit*)
- 14) Each morning, Pang brushes his teeth and combs his hair. (or *brushed...combed*)
- 15) I clean the house today, so I can go to the movies tonight. (or *cleaned...could*)

### Correcting Dangling Modifiers

Directions: Re-write the following sentences to correct the misplaced modifiers.  
(See examples in your text, *Grammar for Writing*, pp. 13-15 to 13-19.)

Example:	Wrong:	She missed the taxi, stopping to talk to a friend.
	Correct:	<u>Stopping to talk to a friend</u> , she missed the bus. – or – She missed the bus <u>because she stopped</u> to talk to a friend.

1) Tired of reading a book, the television special was a welcome change.

---

2) Made from scratch, I ate the delicious pizza.

---

3) Xee put her new puppy in the car next to its mother.

---

4) Sliding across the floor, Petros saw the ice cube.

---

5) Having worked all night, the job had exhausted Carla.

---

6) Rising over the trees, I watched the new moon.

---

7) She bought a chain from the store that was 16 inches long.

---

8) Renaldo ran the marathon in New York City that was his first ever.

---

9) The little girl called the 911 operator using the cell phone.

---

10) The children found a grass snake looking in the field.

---

◆ Please check your work. (There are several different ways to make these sentences correct. If you are unsure of your answer, show this exercise to a GOAL English instructor.)



### Correcting Dangling Modifiers - KEY

Directions: Re-write the following sentences to correct the misplaced modifiers.  
(See examples in your text, *Grammar for Writing*, pp. 13-15 to 13-19.)

Example:	Wrong:	She missed the taxi, stopping to talk to a friend.
	Correct:	<u>Stopping to talk to a friend</u> , she missed the bus. – or – She missed the bus <u>because she stopped</u> to talk to a friend.

These are sample answers. Your answers may vary.

1) Tired of reading a book, the television special was a welcome change.

Tired of reading a book, I thought the television special was a welcome change.

The television special was a welcome change because I was tired of reading a book.

2) Made from scratch, I ate the delicious pizza.

I ate the delicious pizza made from scratch.

3) Xee put her new puppy in the car next to its mother.

Xee put her new puppy next to its mother in the car.

4) Sliding across the floor, Petros saw the ice cube.

Petros saw the ice sliding across the floor.

5) Having worked all night, the job had exhausted Carla.

Having worked all night, Carla was exhausted.

6) Rising over the trees, I watched the new moon.

I watched the moon rising over the trees..

7) She bought a chain from the store that was 16 inches long.

She bought a chain that was 16 inches long from the store.

8) Renaldo ran the marathon in New York City that was his first ever.

Renaldo ran the marathon that was his first ever in New York City.

9) The little girl called the 911 operator using the cell phone.

Using a cell phone, the little girl called the 911 operator.

10) The children found a grass snake looking in the field.

Looking in the field, the children found a grass snake.

## End Punctuation 1

(Periods & Abbreviations, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout
- 3) I will tour the USA in my Chevrolet
- 4) Please send your questions to BC Collins
- 5) Are you going to the dance
- 6) Wow Did the time ever fly
- 7) Would you please close the door
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A M
- 9) What time does the exam start
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet
- 13) What did your doctor, Tess C Smith, M D , tell you
- 14) It is time to study for my test
- 15) Look where you're going You almost hit me
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D C
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year
- 18) Will you please sit here
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season
- ◆ Please check your work.

End Punctuation 1 - KEY  
(Periods, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight.
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout?
- 3) I will tour the U.S.A. in my Chevrolet.
- 4) Please send your questions to B.C. Collins.
- 5) Are you going to the dance?
- 6) Wow! Did the time ever fly!
- 7) Would you please close the door.
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A. M.
- 9) What time does the exam start?
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake!
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet.
- 13) What did your doctor, Tessa C. Smith, M. D. , tell you?
- 14) It is time to study for my test.
- 15) Look where you're going! You almost hit me!
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D. C.
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year.
- 18) Will you please sit here.
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race?
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season.

## End Punctuation 1

(Periods & Abbreviations, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout
- 3) I will tour the USA in my Chevrolet
- 4) Please send your questions to BC Collins
- 5) Are you going to the dance
- 6) Wow Did the time ever fly
- 7) Would you please close the door
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A M
- 9) What time does the exam start
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet
- 13) What did your doctor, Tess C Smith, M D , tell you
- 14) It is time to study for my test
- 15) Look where you're going You almost hit me
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D C
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year
- 18) Will you please sit here
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season
- ◆ Please check your work.

End Punctuation 1 - KEY  
(Periods, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight.
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout?
- 3) I will tour the U.S.A. in my Chevrolet.
- 4) Please send your questions to B.C. Collins.
- 5) Are you going to the dance?
- 6) Wow! Did the time ever fly!
- 7) Would you please close the door.
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A. M.
- 9) What time does the exam start?
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake!
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet.
- 13) What did your doctor, Tessa C. Smith, M. D. , tell you?
- 14) It is time to study for my test.
- 15) Look where you're going! You almost hit me!
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D. C.
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year.
- 18) Will you please sit here.
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race?
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season.

## End Punctuation 1

(Periods & Abbreviations, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout
- 3) I will tour the USA in my Chevrolet
- 4) Please send your questions to BC Collins
- 5) Are you going to the dance
- 6) Wow Did the time ever fly
- 7) Would you please close the door
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A M
- 9) What time does the exam start
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet
- 13) What did your doctor, Tess C Smith, M D , tell you
- 14) It is time to study for my test
- 15) Look where you're going You almost hit me
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D C
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year
- 18) Will you please sit here
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season
- ◆ Please check your work.

End Punctuation 1 - KEY  
(Periods, Question Marks, Exclamation Points)

Directions: Please insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points wherever they're needed.

Example:	Mrs C L Adams is my aunt	Mrs. C.L. Adams is my aunt.
----------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

- 1) I have a PTA meeting tonight.
- 2) Did you see that huge rainbow trout?
- 3) I will tour the U.S.A. in my Chevrolet.
- 4) Please send your questions to B.C. Collins.
- 5) Are you going to the dance?
- 6) Wow! Did the time ever fly!
- 7) Would you please close the door.
- 8) We are leaving on our trip tomorrow morning at 6:30 A. M.
- 9) What time does the exam start?
- 10) Please use a quiet voice in the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Catch that snake!
- 12) I thought I told you to be quiet.
- 13) What did your doctor, Tessa C. Smith, M. D. , tell you?
- 14) It is time to study for my test.
- 15) Look where you're going! You almost hit me!
- 16) Tia forgot her PIN number during her visit to Washington, D. C.
- 17) Winter seems to come more quickly every year.
- 18) Will you please sit here.
- 19) Does a turtle really have a chance of winning a race?
- 20) Summer is my favorite Wisconsin season.

## Finding Adjectives 1

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adjectives (adj).

Example: *N* *V* *V* *adj* *N* *adj* *N* *adj* *N*  
Ann is buying her best friend a birthday present at the local mall.

1. A Washington delicious apple is red, sweet, and crisp.
2. We were the first ones to see the terrible accident.
3. Several years passed before the new park was built.
4. Tristan, my sister's fiancé, works at a computer software company.
5. Valentine's Day is my favorite holiday.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
6. A police officer directed the heavy traffic on the busy downtown street.
7. We tried to find an empty space in the multi-level parking ramp.
8. Our sudden yell nearly scared him into a head-on collision.
9. The emergency medical technicians were required to learn the exact locations of all the area hospitals.
10. Precise locations helped the lost tourists in finding the correct intersection.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. We have many strange, unpredictable days in March.
12. The winning contestant used his prize money to purchase fifteen hamburgers.
13. The rolling thunder was loud during that sudden downpour of rain.
14. Although our tour guide seemed calm, we were uneasy and nervous about the steep climb.
15. Our seats in the seventh row were excellent.
- ◆ Check your work.



### Finding Adjectives 1 - KEY

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adjectives (adj).

Example: <sup>N</sup> Ann <sup>V</sup> is <sup>V</sup> buying <sup>adj</sup> her <sup>N</sup> best friend <sup>adj</sup> a birthday present <sup>N</sup> at the local <sup>adj</sup> mall <sup>N</sup>.

1. <sup>Adj</sup> A <sup>adj</sup> Washington delicious <sup>N</sup> apple <sup>V</sup> is <sup>adj</sup> red, <sup>adj</sup> sweet, and <sup>adj</sup> crisp.

2. <sup>V</sup> We <sup>adj</sup> were the <sup>N</sup> first ones <sup>adj</sup> to see the <sup>N</sup> terrible accident.

3. <sup>Adj</sup> Several <sup>N</sup> years <sup>adj</sup> passed before the <sup>N</sup> new park <sup>N</sup> was built.

4. <sup>N</sup> Tristan, <sup>adj</sup> my sister's <sup>N</sup> fiancé, <sup>V</sup> works at a <sup>adj</sup> computer software <sup>N</sup> company.

5. <sup>(adj + N or all Proper N) V</sup> Valentine's Day <sup>adj</sup> is my <sup>N</sup> favorite holiday.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

6. <sup>Adj</sup> A <sup>N</sup> police officer <sup>v</sup> directed the <sup>adj</sup> heavy traffic <sup>N</sup> on the <sup>adj</sup> busy <sup>adj</sup> downtown <sup>N</sup> street.

7. <sup>Adj</sup> We <sup>N</sup> tried to find an <sup>N</sup> empty space <sup>adj</sup> in the <sup>adj</sup> multi-level <sup>N</sup> parking ramp.

8. <sup>Adj</sup> Our <sup>N</sup> sudden yell <sup>V</sup> nearly scared <sup>adj</sup> him into a <sup>N</sup> head-on collision.

9. <sup>Adj</sup> The <sup>adj</sup> emergency medical <sup>N</sup> technicians <sup>V</sup> were required to learn the <sup>V</sup> exact <sup>adj</sup> locations <sup>N</sup> of all the <sup>Adj</sup> area <sup>N</sup> hospitals.

10. <sup>Adj</sup> Precise <sup>N</sup> locations <sup>V</sup> helped the <sup>adj</sup> lost <sup>N</sup> tourists in finding the <sup>N</sup> correct <sup>adj</sup> intersection <sup>N</sup>.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. <sup>V</sup> We <sup>adj</sup> have many <sup>adj</sup> strange, <sup>adj</sup> unpredictable <sup>N</sup> days <sup>N</sup> in March.

12. <sup>Adj</sup> The <sup>N</sup> winning contestant <sup>V</sup> used his <sup>adj</sup> prize money <sup>adj</sup> to purchase <sup>N</sup> fifteen <sup>N</sup> hamburgers.

13. <sup>Adj</sup> The <sup>N</sup> rolling thunder <sup>V</sup> was loud <sup>adj</sup> during that <sup>N</sup> sudden <sup>N</sup> downpour <sup>N</sup> of rain.

14. <sup>Adj</sup> Although <sup>N</sup> our <sup>V</sup> tour guide <sup>adj</sup> seemed <sup>V</sup> calm, <sup>adj</sup> we <sup>adj</sup> were <sup>adj</sup> uneasy <sup>adj</sup> and <sup>adj</sup> nervous <sup>adj</sup> about the <sup>N</sup> steep <sup>N</sup> climb.

15. <sup>N</sup> Our <sup>adj</sup> seats <sup>N</sup> in the <sup>V</sup> seventh <sup>adj</sup> row <sup>N</sup> were excellent.

## Finding Adverbs 2

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adverbs (adv).

<i>N</i>	<i>adv</i>	<i>V</i>	<i>prep</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>adv</i>
Example: Ann carefully thought about buying her friend a present at the mall yesterday.								

1. I finished my homework promptly.
2. Your answer suddenly made the question clearer to me.
3. They sneaked quietly into the lecture hall.
4. Although our neighbors never complained, we played the music loudly.
5. We often feel discouraged at first but achieve success later.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
6. Tomorrow she plans to get her life in order.
7. I really think they watch too much television.
8. We were outside enjoying this rather beautiful spring weather.
9. Our family's vacations always seem to pass very quickly.
10. He cleaned quite well upstairs, but it's still a mess here.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Overhead the stars twinkled very brightly.
12. We were rather cautious and seldom left our car while driving through the animal park.
13. Some people never trust buying on the Internet will their credit cards, even though most major Web sites are usually quite secure and safe.
14. Marci climbed carefully down the cliff and later sat down on a jagged rock.
15. Tomás could not stop his car on the rather icy roads and nearly slid into the ditch.
- ◆ Check your work.

### Finding Adverbs 2 - KEY

- Directions: 1) Label the nouns (N).  
2) Label the verbs (V).  
3) Label the adverbs (adv).

Example: <sup>N</sup> Ann <sup>adv</sup> carefully <sup>V</sup> thought <sup>prep</sup> about <sup>N</sup> buying <sup>N</sup> her <sup>N</sup> friend <sup>N</sup> a <sup>N</sup> present <sup>adv</sup> at the mall <sup>N</sup> yesterday.

<sup>V</sup> I <sup>N</sup> finished <sup>adv</sup> my homework promptly.

<sup>N</sup> Your answer <sup>adv</sup> suddenly <sup>V</sup> made <sup>N</sup> the question <sup>adv</sup> clearer to me.

<sup>V</sup> They <sup>adv</sup> sneaked <sup>N</sup> quietly into the lecture hall.

<sup>N</sup> Although our neighbors <sup>adv</sup> never <sup>V</sup> complained, <sup>V</sup> we <sup>N</sup> played <sup>adv</sup> the music loudly.

<sup>Adv</sup> We <sup>V</sup> often <sup>(adj)</sup> feel discouraged <sup>V</sup> at first <sup>N</sup> but <sup>adv</sup> achieve success later.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

<sup>Adv</sup> Tomorrow <sup>v</sup> she <sup>N</sup> plans <sup>N</sup> to get her life in order.

<sup>Adv</sup> I <sup>V</sup> really <sup>V</sup> think <sup>adv</sup> they <sup>(adj)</sup> watch <sup>N</sup> too much television.

<sup>V</sup> We <sup>adv</sup> were <sup>N</sup> outside <sup>adv</sup> enjoying <sup>(adj)</sup> this rather beautiful <sup>N</sup> spring weather.

<sup>N</sup> Our family's vacations <sup>adv</sup> always <sup>V</sup> seem <sup>adv</sup> to pass <sup>adv</sup> very quickly.

<sup>V</sup> He <sup>adv</sup> cleaned <sup>adv</sup> quite well <sup>adv</sup> upstairs, <sup>adv</sup> but <sup>N</sup> it's <sup>adv</sup> still a mess <sup>adv</sup> here.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

<sup>adv</sup> Overhead <sup>N</sup> the stars <sup>V</sup> twinkled <sup>adv</sup> very <sup>adv</sup> brightly.

<sup>V</sup> We <sup>adv</sup> were <sup>(adj)</sup> rather cautious <sup>adv</sup> and <sup>V</sup> seldom <sup>N</sup> left <sup>N</sup> our car <sup>(adj)</sup> while <sup>N</sup> driving <sup>N</sup> through <sup>(adj)</sup> the animal park.

<sup>N</sup> Some people <sup>adv</sup> never <sup>V</sup> trust <sup>N</sup> buying <sup>N</sup> on the Internet <sup>N</sup> with <sup>N</sup> their credit cards, <sup>N</sup> even <sup>N</sup> though <sup>N</sup> most major Web sites <sup>N</sup> are <sup>V</sup> usually <sup>adv</sup> quite <sup>adv</sup> secure <sup>(adj)</sup> and <sup>(adj)</sup> safe.

<sup>N</sup> Marci <sup>V</sup> climbed <sup>adv</sup> carefully <sup>adv</sup> down <sup>N</sup> the cliff <sup>adv</sup> and <sup>v</sup> later <sup>adv</sup> sat <sup>(adj)</sup> down <sup>N</sup> on a jagged rock.

<sup>N</sup> Tomás <sup>V</sup> could <sup>adv</sup> not <sup>V</sup> stop <sup>N</sup> his car <sup>adv</sup> on the <sup>(adj)</sup> rather icy <sup>N</sup> roads <sup>adv</sup> and <sup>adv</sup> nearly <sup>V</sup> slid <sup>N</sup> into the ditch.

## Identifying and Using Gerunds

A *gerund* (pronounced “jair – und”) is a word that ends in *-ing* and names an activity. Gerunds, therefore, are used as nouns in sentences, not as verbs. (A verb shows action – what people or things do – or connects nouns and pronouns to words that describe or identify them in a sentence.)

What makes gerunds confusing is these same *-ing* words CAN be used as verbs when they demonstrate the “action” in the sentence. In other words, what the subject is doing, thinking, feeling, and so on.

Remember gerunds are used as nouns when they name an activity. Also, possessive pronouns (his, my, our, your, her, their, its) can be used before gerunds.

Example: Your singing is something which inspires people.

Singing is a gerund in this sentence because (1) it is an *-ing* ending word that names an activity, (2) it is preceded by a possessive pronoun (your), and (3) it acts as a noun (the subject of the sentence).

Notice how possessive pronouns (PP) can mark *-ing* words as gerunds in these sentences:

1. Her shopping is causing financial troubles in the family.  
PP
2. It was his coaching that inspired thousands of fans.  
PP
3. During the swim meet my timing was off.  
PP

Practice Exercise: Label the possessive pronouns (PP) and underline the gerunds in these sentences.

1. Tom enjoyed your dancing in the high school play.
2. Their playing together means a lot to many families.
3. Sue told us that her cooking had won several awards.
4. Because of the humming outside the window, we couldn't sleep.
5. Running errands is how I will spend this Saturday.
6. I like skiing, golfing, and fishing.
7. For polishing wood furniture, you should use lemon oil.
8. Jason's working every weekend means we seldom go anywhere.
9. Driving to work takes me about 45 minutes each way.
10. Ken loves baking his own bread from scratch.

## Identifying and Using Gerunds – KEY to Practice Exercises

PP

1. Tom enjoyed your dancing in the high school play.

PP

2. Their playing together means a lot to many families.

PP

3. Sue told us that her cooking had won several awards.

4. Because of the humming outside the window, we couldn't sleep.  
(“Humming” follows a noun marker – *the*.)

5. Running errands is how I will spend this Saturday.  
(“Running” is the subject of the sentence.)

6. I like skiing, golfing, and fishing.  
(These are all activities “I” enjoy.)

7. For polishing wood furniture, you should use lemon oil.  
(“Polishing” follows the preposition *for*.)

8. Jason's working every weekend means we seldom go anywhere.  
(“Working” is the subject of this sentence.)

9. Driving to work takes me about 45 minutes each way.  
(“Driving” is the subject of this sentence.)

10. Ken loves baking his own bread from scratch.  
(The activity that Ken loves is *baking*.)

## How to Find **NOUNS** in Sentences

### Noun Test 1 - Part 1

- **Words** that come after A, AN, or The are **NOUNS**.  
(A, an, and the are noun markers.)

Read the examples below:

1. **A** dog was found in **the** park.
2. **The** boy ran fast.
3. **An** apple is **a** fruit.

Write the noun markers here.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Write the nouns here.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Noun Test 1 - Part 2

- **Words** that come after possessive pronouns are **NOUNS**.

Possessive pronouns are **my, our, their, his, her, its, your**.

Read the examples below.

1. **My** car is red.
2. **Our** trip is planned.
3. **Their** jackets are torn.
4. **His** pen isn't blue or black.

Write the possessive pronouns.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

Write the nouns.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

## Noun Test 2

- A **NOUN** can be used as a **subject** of a sentence.

Read the examples below.

**Friends** are valuable.

*Friends* is the subject.

**Brian** is funny.

*Brian* is the subject.

**Kites** are colorful.

*Kites* is the subject.

- A **NOUN** can be used as an **object of a preposition**.

Read the examples below.

You can see the boy *in* the **picture**.

He is *at* the **farm** today.

He ran out *without* a **jacket**.

She drove *into* the **wall**.

## Noun Test 3

- If you can **have** it or **give** it, it is a **NOUN**.

Read the examples below.

**Freedom** - Can you have it? YES! It is a **noun!**

**Beauty** - Can you have it? YES! It is a **noun!**

**Friendship** - Can you have it? Yes! It is a **noun!**

**Advice** - Can you give it? YES! It is a **noun!**

- If the word names an **activity** and ends in **-ing**, it is a **NOUN!**

Read the examples.

***Yelling***

***Walking***

***Singing***

***Running***

***Camping***

These all name an **activity** and end in **-ing**.

Example sentence: ***Camping*** at Jellystone Park is a favorite family activity.

Read the following paragraph and notice all the **nouns**.

The **stadium** hummed with **excitement**. The **fans** had **pride** in the **reputation** of the **team**. The **cheering** of the **fans** gave **encouragement** to the **team**. The **quarterback** threw two **touchdowns**, which caused even more **commotion**. His **skill** and **courage** dazzled the **spectators**. Such **fearlessness** earned the **quarterback** the **admiration** of his **teammates**.

## Irregular Verbs 1

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in the parentheses.

Example: (write) This story was \_\_\_\_\_ by my son. **written**

- 1) (rise) The hot air balloon \_\_\_\_\_ gently into the sky.
- 2) (lie) The pebble on the beach \_\_\_\_\_ undisturbed until the tide moved it out to sea.
- 3) (choose) Bill \_\_\_\_\_ the red Corvette to drive to the dance.
- 4) (take) The last pencil from the box had been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) (tear) John \_\_\_\_\_ his favorite green pants on the jagged fence post.
- 6) (begin) The sunshine had \_\_\_\_\_ to stream in through the curtains.
- 7) (keep) The library assessed a charge because he had \_\_\_\_\_ the books too long.
- 8) (feed) "Yesterday, Dad \_\_\_\_\_ us pancakes for breakfast," said Max.
- 9) (bring) Buckeye \_\_\_\_\_ the chew toy to his master.
- 10) (ring) The alarm clock had \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning to wake the family.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) (blow) The leaves have \_\_\_\_\_ into the street and gutters
- 12) (win) The Chicago White Sox \_\_\_\_\_ many games during the regular season.
- 13) (see) Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the beautiful sunflowers this fall?
- 14) (ride) The bike \_\_\_\_\_ smoothly with the new tires.
- 15) (put) We have \_\_\_\_\_ the chandelier in the dining room above the table.
- 16) (spend) We \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money for tennis shoes at the mall earlier today.
- 17) (fall) During the storm, the tree \_\_\_\_\_ in the woods.
- 18) (teach) My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ me how to use a camera when I was little.
- 19) (write) "Mary, have you \_\_\_\_\_ your report on the computer, yet?"
- 20) (run) The program has \_\_\_\_\_ for about an hour so far.

◆ Check your work.



## Irregular Verbs 1 - Key

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in the parentheses.

Example: (write) This story was \_\_\_\_\_ by my son. **written**

- 1) (rise) The hot air balloon rose gently into the sky.
  - 2) (lie) The pebble on the beach lay undisturbed until the tide moved it out to sea.
  - 3) (choose) Bill chose the red Corvette to drive to the dance.
  - 4) (take) The last pencil from the box had been taken.
  - 5) (tear) John tore his favorite green pants on the jagged fence post.
  - 6) (begin) The sunshine had begun to stream in through the curtains.
  - 7) (keep) The library assessed a charge because he had kept the books too long.
  - 8) (feed) "Yesterday, Dad fed us pancakes for breakfast," said Max.
  - 9) (bring) Buckeye brought the chew toy to his master.
  - 10) (ring) The alarm clock had rung in the morning to wake the family.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (blow) The leaves have blown into the street and gutters
  - 12) (win) The Chicago White Sox won many games during the regular season.
  - 13) (see) Have you seen the beautiful sunflowers this fall?
  - 14) (ride) The bike rode smoothly with the new tires.
  - 15) (put) We have put the chandelier in the dining room above the table.
  - 16) (spend) We spent a lot of money for tennis shoes at the mall earlier today.
  - 17) (fall) During the storm, the tree fell in the woods.
  - 18) (teach) My uncle taught me how to use a camera when I was little.
  - 19) (write) "Mary, have you written your report on the computer, yet?"
  - 20) (run) The program has run for about an hour so far.

## Irregular Verbs 1

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in the parentheses.

Example: (write) This story was \_\_\_\_\_ by my son. **written**

- 1) (rise) The hot air balloon \_\_\_\_\_ gently into the sky.
- 2) (lie) The pebble on the beach \_\_\_\_\_ undisturbed until the tide moved it out to sea.
- 3) (choose) Bill \_\_\_\_\_ the red Corvette to drive to the dance.
- 4) (take) The last pencil from the box had been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) (tear) John \_\_\_\_\_ his favorite green pants on the jagged fence post.
- 6) (begin) The sunshine had \_\_\_\_\_ to stream in through the curtains.
- 7) (keep) The library assessed a charge because he had \_\_\_\_\_ the books too long.
- 8) (feed) "Yesterday, Dad \_\_\_\_\_ us pancakes for breakfast," said Max.
- 9) (bring) Buckeye \_\_\_\_\_ the chew toy to his master.
- 10) (ring) The alarm clock had \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning to wake the family.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) (blow) The leaves have \_\_\_\_\_ into the street and gutters
- 12) (win) The Chicago White Sox \_\_\_\_\_ many games during the regular season.
- 13) (see) Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the beautiful sunflowers this fall?
- 14) (ride) The bike \_\_\_\_\_ smoothly with the new tires.
- 15) (put) We have \_\_\_\_\_ the chandelier in the dining room above the table.
- 16) (spend) We \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money for tennis shoes at the mall earlier today.
- 17) (fall) During the storm, the tree \_\_\_\_\_ in the woods.
- 18) (teach) My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ me how to use a camera when I was little.
- 19) (write) "Mary, have you \_\_\_\_\_ your report on the computer, yet?"
- 20) (run) The program has \_\_\_\_\_ for about an hour so far.

◆ Check your work.

## Irregular Verbs 1 - Key

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in the parentheses.

Example: (write) This story was \_\_\_\_\_ by my son. **written**

- 1) (rise) The hot air balloon rose gently into the sky.
  - 2) (lie) The pebble on the beach lay undisturbed until the tide moved it out to sea.
  - 3) (choose) Bill chose the red Corvette to drive to the dance.
  - 4) (take) The last pencil from the box had been taken.
  - 5) (tear) John tore his favorite green pants on the jagged fence post.
  - 6) (begin) The sunshine had begun to stream in through the curtains.
  - 7) (keep) The library assessed a charge because he had kept the books too long.
  - 8) (feed) "Yesterday, Dad fed us pancakes for breakfast," said Max.
  - 9) (bring) Buckeye brought the chew toy to his master.
  - 10) (ring) The alarm clock had rung in the morning to wake the family.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (blow) The leaves have blown into the street and gutters
  - 12) (win) The Chicago White Sox won many games during the regular season.
  - 13) (see) Have you seen the beautiful sunflowers this fall?
  - 14) (ride) The bike rode smoothly with the new tires.
  - 15) (put) We have put the chandelier in the dining room above the table.
  - 16) (spend) We spent a lot of money for tennis shoes at the mall earlier today.
  - 17) (fall) During the storm, the tree fell in the woods.
  - 18) (teach) My uncle taught me how to use a camera when I was little.
  - 19) (write) "Mary, have you written your report on the computer, yet?"
  - 20) (run) The program has run for about an hour so far.

## Irregular Verbs 2

Directions: Underline the correct verb choice in each sentence.

Example: The math test had (took / taken) the whole class period.

- 1) I have never (saw / seen) a Packers' game at Lambeau Field.
- 2) Hans (had swam / had swum) ten laps before lunch.
- 3) They (have eaten / have ate) dinner already.
- 4) Julia has (hid / hidden) her tooth under the pillow.
- 5) The bird (had flew / had flown) past the window every morning.
- 6) A tree (had fell / had fallen) across the path.
- 7) I should (have went / have gone) to the graduation ceremony.
- 8) My favorite sweater has (shrank / shrunk) in the dryer.
- 9) My grandchild has (sang / sung) in the school play.
- 10) Mary had (wrote/ written) to her family daily.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Someone has (stole / stolen) my watch.
- 12) The wind (shook / has shook) the shingles off the roof.
- 13) All the contestants now (have ran / have run) the course.
- 14) My alarm clock (has rang / has rung) too early.
- 15) Franco (had drew / had drawn) the perfect poker hand.
- 16) No one has (brung / brought) treats to the party.
- 17) The children (have drank / have drunk) too much soda.
- 18) Stanley (has chose / has chosen) a business partner.
- 19) They (have began / have begun) counting this year's profits.
- 20) Andy (has rode / has ridden) his best race ever.

◆ Check your work.

## Irregular Verbs 2 - Key

Directions: Underline the correct verb choice in each sentence.

Example: The math test had (took / taken) the whole class period.

- 1) I have never (saw / seen) a Packers' game at Lambeau Field.
  - 2) Hans (had swam / had swum) ten laps before lunch.
  - 3) They (have eaten / have ate) dinner already.
  - 4) Julia has (hid / hidden) her tooth under the pillow.
  - 5) The bird (had flew / had flown) past the window every morning.
  - 6) A tree (had fell / had fallen) across the path.
  - 7) I should (have went / have gone) to the graduation ceremony.
  - 8) My favorite sweater has (shrank / shrunk) in the dryer.
  - 9) My grandchild has (sang / sung) in the school play.
  - 10) Mary had (wrote/ written) to her family daily.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Someone has (stole / stolen) my watch.
  - 12) The wind (shook / has shook) the shingles off the roof.
  - 13) All the contestants now (have ran / have run) the course.
  - 14) My alarm clock (has rang / has rung) too early.
  - 15) Franco (had drew / had drawn) the perfect poker hand.
  - 16) No one has (brung / brought) treats to the party.
  - 17) The children (have drank / have drunk) too much soda.
  - 18) Stanley (has chose / has chosen) a business partner.
  - 19) They (have began / have begun) counting this year's profits.
  - 20) Andy (has rode / has ridden) his best race ever.

## Irregular Verbs 2

Directions: Underline the correct verb choice in each sentence.

Example: The math test had (took / taken) the whole class period.

- 1) I have never (saw / seen) a Packers' game at Lambeau Field.
- 2) Hans (had swam / had swum) ten laps before lunch.
- 3) They (have eaten / have ate) dinner already.
- 4) Julia has (hid / hidden) her tooth under the pillow.
- 5) The bird (had flew / had flown) past the window every morning.
- 6) A tree (had fell / had fallen) across the path.
- 7) I should (have went / have gone) to the graduation ceremony.
- 8) My favorite sweater has (shrank / shrunk) in the dryer.
- 9) My grandchild has (sang / sung) in the school play.
- 10) Mary had (wrote/ written) to her family daily.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Someone has (stole / stolen) my watch.
- 12) The wind (shook / has shook) the shingles off the roof.
- 13) All the contestants now (have ran / have run) the course.
- 14) My alarm clock (has rang / has rung) too early.
- 15) Franco (had drew / had drawn) the perfect poker hand.
- 16) No one has (brung / brought) treats to the party.
- 17) The children (have drank / have drunk) too much soda.
- 18) Stanley (has chose / has chosen) a business partner.
- 19) They (have began / have begun) counting this year's profits.
- 20) Andy (has rode / has ridden) his best race ever.

◆ Check your work.

## Irregular Verbs 2 - Key

Directions: Underline the correct verb choice in each sentence.

Example: The math test had (took / taken) the whole class period.

- 1) I have never (saw / seen) a Packers' game at Lambeau Field.
  - 2) Hans (had swam / had swum) ten laps before lunch.
  - 3) They (have eaten / have ate) dinner already.
  - 4) Julia has (hid / hidden) her tooth under the pillow.
  - 5) The bird (had flew / had flown) past the window every morning.
  - 6) A tree (had fell / had fallen) across the path.
  - 7) I should (have went / have gone) to the graduation ceremony.
  - 8) My favorite sweater has (shrank / shrunk) in the dryer.
  - 9) My grandchild has (sang / sung) in the school play.
  - 10) Mary had (wrote/ written) to her family daily.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Someone has (stole / stolen) my watch.
  - 12) The wind (shook / has shook) the shingles off the roof.
  - 13) All the contestants now (have ran / have run) the course.
  - 14) My alarm clock (has rang / has rung) too early.
  - 15) Franco (had drew / had drawn) the perfect poker hand.
  - 16) No one has (brung / brought) treats to the party.
  - 17) The children (have drank / have drunk) too much soda.
  - 18) Stanley (has chose / has chosen) a business partner.
  - 19) They (have began / have begun) counting this year's profits.
  - 20) Andy (has rode / has ridden) his best race ever.

### Irregular Verbs 3

Directions: Circle the correct verb in each sentence below (remember to check for helping verbs).

Example:            Jessica (has rode / <b>has ridden</b> ) her bicycle to the store.
---

- 1) The students (have began / have begun) their homework assignment.
  - 2) Lucy (has chose / has chosen) her courses for the semester.
  - 3) The men (have drank / have drunk) a full pot of coffee.
  - 4) Charles (has brung / has brought) his parents to tour the school today.
  - 5) Anna (had drew / had drawn) a portrait of her horse.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) All of the children (have saw / have seen) that movie.
  - 7) The English lesson (took / had took) the entire class period.
  - 8) Christina (had swam / had swum) in only two events during the meet.
  - 9) Pang and his father (have eaten / have ate) breakfast already.
  - 10) The airplane (had flew / had flown) over the farm every morning during the last week.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Jessica (has rode / has ridden) her bicycle to school every day.
  - 12) The church bell (has rung / has rang) every day at noon for as long as I can remember.
  - 13) All of the students (have ran / have run) out of time.
  - 14) The dog (has stole / has stolen) the bone from the cupboard.
  - 15) The sweater (has shrank / has shrunk) since I wore it last.
- ◆ Check your work.



### IRREGULAR VERB PRACTICE 3 - Key

Directions: Circle the correct verb in each sentence below (remember to check for helping verbs).

Example: Jessica (has rode / has ridden) her bicycle to the store.

- 1) The students (have began / have begun) their homework assignment.
  - 2) Lucy (has chose / has chosen) her courses for the semester.
  - 3) The workers (have drank / have drunk) a full pot of coffee.
  - 4) Charles (has brung / has brought) his parents to tour the school today.
  - 5) Anna (had drew / had drawn) a portrait of her horse.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) All of the children (have saw / have seen) that movie.
  - 7) The English lesson (took / had took) the entire class period.
  - 8) Christina (had swam / had swum) in only two events during the meet.
  - 9) Pang and his father (have eaten / have ate) breakfast already.
  - 10) The airplane (had flew / had flown) over the farm every morning during the last week.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Jessica (has rode / has ridden) her bicycle to school every morning.
  - 12) The church bell (has rung / has rang) every day at noon for as long as I can remember.
  - 13) All of the students (have ran / have run) out of time.
  - 14) The dog (has stole / has stolen) the bone from the cupboard.
  - 15) The sweater (has shrank / has shrunk) since I last wore it.

## Irregular Verbs 4

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1) My friend has not \_\_\_\_\_ in a marathon since 2005. (run)
- 2) Maria had \_\_\_\_\_ to the Super Bowl! (go)
- 3) My dog Gracie has \_\_\_\_\_ all her water. (drink)
- 4) The workers have \_\_\_\_\_ the new bridge. (begin)
- 5) Henri had \_\_\_\_\_ the most recent edition of the paper. (bring)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) Saul has \_\_\_\_\_ five letters to the editor. (write)
- 7) The party \_\_\_\_\_ next weekend. (be)
- 8) Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ the ACT or the Accuplacer? (take)
- 9) Max \_\_\_\_\_ his personal day last Friday. (take)
- 10) Jaime \_\_\_\_\_ his favorite jeans. (tear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

**Now correct any errors in the sentences below. If there are no errors, write correct.**

- 11) Liza brang the excellent salad to the party.
- 12) Yesterday I seen an eagle flying over the river.
- 13) My friends and I have went there before.
- 14) The tree in the backyard had grew a lot during the summer.
- 15) All the students have ate their lunches early.
- 16) Has Erik drove a standard transmission before?
- 17) The boat sunk in the ocean.
- 18) All the leaves have fell off the trees.
- 19) Gloria has took all the Accuplacer test preparation classes.
- 20) Has Farina ever swum in the district swim meet?

◆ Check your work.

## Irregular Verbs 4 KEY

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1) My friend has not **run** in a marathon since 2005. (run)
- 2) Maria had **gone** to the Super Bowl! (go)
- 3) My dog Gracie has **drunk** all her water. (drink)
- 4) The workers have **begun** the new bridge. (begin)
- 5) Henri had **brought** the most recent edition of the paper. (bring)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) Saul has **written** five letters to the editor. (write)
- 7) The party **will be** next weekend. (be)
- 8) Have you ever **taken** the ACT or the Accuplacer? (take)
- 9) Max **took** his personal day last Friday. (take)
- 10) Jaime **tore** his favorite jeans. (tear)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

**Now correct any errors in the sentences below. If there are no errors, write correct.**

- 11) Liza ~~brang~~ the excellent salad to the party. **brought**
- 12) Yesterday I ~~seen~~ an eagle flying over the river. **saw**
- 13) My friends and I have ~~went~~ there before. **gone** or **have went**
- 14) The tree in the backyard had ~~grew~~ a lot during the summer. **grown** or **had grew**
- 15) All the students have ~~ate~~ their lunches early. **eaten** or **have ate**
- 16) Has Erik ~~drove~~ a standard transmission before? **driven**
- 17) The boat ~~sunk~~ in the ocean. **sank** or **has sunk** or **is sinking**
- 18) All the leaves have ~~fell~~ off the trees. **fallen** or **have fell**
- 19) Gloria has ~~took~~ all the Accuplacer test preparation classes. **taken** or **has took**
- 20) Has Farina ever swum in the district swim meet? **correct**

◆ Check your work.



## Practice Identifying Parts of a Sentence\*

\* (Make sure you have received and studied “The K.I.S.S. Method of Identifying Sentence Parts” information sheet before doing these exercises.)

Directions: Read the sentences. Identify the subject (S) and verb (V) first. Then identify any other nouns (N). Now identify any adjectives (Adj) and adverbs (Adv) that describe the sentence parts you have already labeled.

Example:                      Adj      S      Adv      V      N                      Adj      N  
**The curious dog eagerly put his paws around the new toy.**

- 1) She reluctantly asked her present employer for a substantial raise.
  - 2) We certainly knew the correct answers after long hours of studying for the exam.
  - 3) The dark cloudy sky and extreme wind quickly turned into a very serious storm.
  - 4) You really shouldn't have to wait for your next dental appointment.
  - 5) Emily happily skipped into her beloved grandmother's open arms.
  - 6) An education is a priceless gift and will really make a difference in getting a good job.
  - 7) Spring has arrived, and green buds have newly appeared on the freshly planted trees and bushes.
  - 8) The father and daughter abruptly stopped hunting and headed to their car at 6:00 p.m.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 9) Lee closed his science book after studying it for an hour and went sleepily to bed.
  - 10) Please share your unique idea with the rest of the interested class.
  - 11) Peter carefully followed the detailed recipe and made a delicious supper for his growing family.
  - 12) It's a good idea to wear warm clothes during cold winter weather.
  - 13) They knew that the apartment could be cleaned quickly in time for their guests.
  - 14) Living a simple uncluttered life can truly help to reduce stress.
  - 15) Amy woke early each morning to do her energetic workout.
  - 16) We were quite embarrassed about the recent incident.

◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Parts of a Sentence - KEY

Example:                          Adj    S    Adv    V                  N                          Adj    N  
**The curious dog eagerly put his paws around the new toy.**

                  S            Adv            V                    Adj            N                                  Adj            N  
1) She reluctantly asked her present employer for a substantial raise.

                  S            Adv            V                    Adj            N                                  Adj    N                          N                          N  
2) We certainly knew the correct answers after long hours of studying for the exam.

                                  Adj    Adj            S                    Adj            S            Adv            V                                  Adv            Adj            N  
3) The dark cloudy sky and extreme wind quickly turned into a very serious storm.

                  S            Adv            V            Adv            V                                  Adj            Adj                          N  
4) You really shouldn't have to wait for your next dental appointment.

                  S            Adv            V                                  Adj            Adj                          Adj            N  
5) Emily happily skipped into her beloved grandmother's open arms.

                                  S            V            Adj            N                    V            Adv            V                                  N                          N                          Adj            N  
6) An education is a priceless gift and will really make a difference in getting a good job.

                  S            V            V                    Adj            N                    V            Adv            V                                  Adv            Adj            N                          N  
7) Spring has arrived, and green buds have newly appeared on the freshly planted trees and bushes.

                                  N                          N                          Adv            V                                  N                                  V                                  N                          N  
8) The father and daughter abruptly stopped hunting and headed to their car at 6:00 p.m.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

                  S            V                                  Adj            N                                  N                                  N                                  V            Adv                          N  
9) Lee closed his science book after studying it for an hour and went sleepily to bed.

(Understood S = you)    V                                  Adj            N                                  N                                  Adj            N  
10) Please share your unique idea with the rest of the interested class.

                  S            Adv            V                                  Adj            N                                  V            Adj            N                                  Adj            N  
11) Peter carefully followed the detailed recipe and made a delicious supper for his growing family.

(It = S, is = V)    Adj            N (infinitive)    Adj            N                                  Adj            Adj            N  
12) It's a good idea to wear warm clothes during cold winter weather.

                  S            V                                  N                                  V            V            V            Adv                                  N                                  N  
13) They knew the apartment could be cleaned quickly in time for their guests.

                  S                    Adj            Adj            N            V            Adv            V (infinitive)    N  
14) Living a simple uncluttered life can truly help to reduce stress.

                  S            V            Adv            Adj            N (infinitive)            Adj            N  
15) Amy woke early each morning to do her energetic workout.

                  S            LV            Adv            Adj                                  Adj            N  
16) We were quite embarrassed about the recent incident. (LV = linking verb – Remember the “seem” test?)

Legal Repairs 1e  
"FAN BOYS" Connectors

Directions: Add an appropriate coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS) and place commas where they are needed. Write *correct* if changes are not needed.

Example: That is a very large tomato. Its color is a beautiful red.  
That is a very large tomato, and its color is a beautiful red.

For  
And  
Nor  
  
But  
Or  
Yet  
So

- 1) I just know I'll do the laundry wrong the first time help me please.
  - 2) Joni is a wonderful singer she doesn't like to sing solos.
  - 3) I am thirsty I just ran 4 miles.
  - 4) Bring a friend we can make it a foursome.
  - 5) Tao will drive to Florida he may fly after all.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) It's the best coffee bar in town its prices are a bit high.
  - 7) We need a house all on one level the stairs are getting difficult to climb.
  - 8) Are we driving to the game are Chad and Laura driving?
  - 9) There was a bad accident on Highway 41 this morning there were no injuries.
  - 10) The beach is a great place on a hot day the breeze is always cool.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My children live in California I don't get to see them as often as I like.
  - 12) Lasagna is my favorite Italian food I also like spaghetti.
  - 13) Your order was placed on May 24 you should receive it by June 1.
  - 14) I will mow the lawn this morning I will mow it this afternoon.
  - 15) You've done well on this exercise you understand how to use coordinating conjunctions.
- ◆ Check your work.

Legal Repairs 1e - KEY  
"FAN BOYS" Connectors

Directions: Add an appropriate coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS) and place commas where they are needed. Write *correct* if changes are not needed.

Example: That is a very large tomato. Its color is a beautiful red.  
That is a very large tomato, and its color is a beautiful red.

For  
And  
Nor  
  
But  
Or  
Yet  
So

- 1) I just know I'll do the laundry wrong the first time, so help me please.
- 2) Joni is a wonderful singer, yet/but she doesn't like to sing solos.
- 3) I am thirsty, for I just ran 4 miles.
- 4) Bring a friend, and/so we can make it a foursome.
- 5) Tao plans to drive to Florida, or/but he may fly after all.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) It's the best coffee bar in town, but/so its prices are a bit high.
- 7) We need a house all on one level, for the stairs are getting difficult to climb.
- 8) Are we driving to the game, or are Chad and Laura driving?
- 9) There was a bad accident on Highway 41 this morning, and/but/yet there were no injuries.
- 10) The beach is a great place on a hot day, and/for the breeze is always cool.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My children live in California, and/so I don't get to see them as often as I like.
- 12) Lasagna is my favorite Italian food, and/but I also like spaghetti.
- 13) Your order was placed on May 24, and/so you should receive it by June 1.
- 14) I will mow the lawn this morning, or I will mow it this afternoon.
- 15) You've done well on this exercise, and/for/so you understand how to use coordinating conjunctions.
- ◆ Check your work.



## LINKING AND ACTION VERBS 1

Directions: Underline the verb or verb phrase in each sentence and identify if it is a linking (LV) or an action (AV) verb.

Example: \_\_\_\_ Susie sounds tired.

Answer: LV Susie sounds tired.

- 1) \_\_\_\_ Lance seemed tired after the train ride.
- 2) \_\_\_\_ Beatrice smelled smoke in the kitchen.
- 3) \_\_\_\_ Jon feels the bumps on the road.
- 4) \_\_\_\_ The cats are eating quickly.
- 5) \_\_\_\_ Marci's green sweater appeared to be dirty.
- 6) \_\_\_\_ The dog on the bench is lonely.
- 7) \_\_\_\_ Those M&M's were devoured by the little boy.
- 8) \_\_\_\_ Sally became the leader of the pack.
- 9) \_\_\_\_ The plate felt warm.
- 10) \_\_\_\_ Our train ride was smooth.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) \_\_\_\_ The curve on the road appeared suddenly.
- 12) \_\_\_\_ Six Flags' roller coaster ride scared the children.
- 13) \_\_\_\_ You sound terrible.
- 14) \_\_\_\_ We became ill after the six course meal.
- 15) \_\_\_\_ The train sounded its horn at the intersection.
- 16) \_\_\_\_ Those two women were twins.
- 17) \_\_\_\_ Chocolate-covered insects taste crunchy.
- 18) \_\_\_\_ That telephone call lasted forever.
- 19) \_\_\_\_ Huge tractors stood still in the field.
- 20) \_\_\_\_ The sun appears bright in the early morning sky.

◆ Check your work.

## LINKING AND ACTION VERBS 1 - KEY

Directions: Underline the verb or verb phrase in each sentence and identify if it is a linking (LV) or an action (AV) verb.

Example:     ___ Susie sounds tired.	Answer: <u>LV</u> Susie <u>sounds</u> tired.
--------------------------------------	--

- 1) LV Lance seemed tired after the train ride.
- 2) AV Beatrice smelled smoke in the kitchen.
- 3) AV Jon feels the bumps on the road.
- 4) AV The cats are eating quickly.
- 5) LV Marci's green sweater appeared to be dirty.
- 6) LV The dog on the bench is lonely.
- 7) AV Those M&M's were devoured by the little boy.
- 8) LV Sally became the leader of the pack.
- 9) LV The plate felt warm.
- 10) LV Our train ride was smooth.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) AV The curve on the road appeared suddenly.
- 12) AV Six Flags' roller coaster ride scared the children.
- 13) LV You sound terrible.
- 14) LV We became ill after the six course meal.
- 15) AV The train sounded its horn at the intersection.
- 16) LV Those two women were twins.
- 17) LV Chocolate-covered insects taste crunchy.
- 18) AV That telephone call lasted forever.
- 19) LV Huge tractors stood still in the field.
- 20) LV The sun appears bright in the early morning sky.

## LINKING AND ACTION VERBS 2

Directions: Underline the verb in each sentence and identify if it is a linking (LV) or an action (AV) verb. (Remember to use the “seem” test for linking verbs.)

Example:

\_\_\_ Susie sounds tired.

(seems)

Answer: LV Susie sounds tired.

\_\_\_ Susie sounds the siren for the fire department.

Answer: AV Susie sounds the siren for the fire department.

- 1) \_\_\_ The logo on the shirt was visible.
- 2) \_\_\_ The history notes were lengthy.
- 3) \_\_\_ We stood in line for two hours.
- 4) \_\_\_ The Game Boy was broken.
- 5) \_\_\_ The Packers appear weak in defense.
- 6) \_\_\_ Her guest seemed content after the conversation.
- 7) \_\_\_ My new couch was colorful and comfortable.
- 8) \_\_\_ We tasted the spicy chili.
- 9) \_\_\_ Abe grew impatient.
- 10) \_\_\_ T-Bone steak for supper sounds delicious.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) \_\_\_ The chili tasted spicy.
- 12) \_\_\_ Lila became sweaty after playing tennis.
- 13) \_\_\_ Cindy was diligent in getting her homework done.
- 14) \_\_\_ Ashley sounded angry in class.
- 15) \_\_\_ Tomatoes grow in Alice’s garden.
- 16) \_\_\_ Mark appeared at the top of the stairs.
- 17) \_\_\_ The colors were faded in the photo.
- 18) \_\_\_ Jade felt the softness of the pillow.
- 19) \_\_\_ Wille is my best friend.
- 20) \_\_\_ The taxi driver sounded his car’s horn.

◆ Check your work.

LINKING AND ACTION VERBS 2 - KEY

Directions: Underline the verb in each sentence and identify if it is a linking (LV) or an action (AV) verb. (Remember to use the “seem” test for linking verbs.)

Example:

\_\_\_ Susie sounds tired.

(seems)

Answer: LV Susie sounds tired.

\_\_\_ Susie sounds the siren for the fire department.

Answer: AV Susie sounds the siren for the fire department.

- 1) LV The logo on the shirt was visible.
- 2) LV The history notes were lengthy.
- 3) AV We stood in line for two hours.
- 4) LV The Game Boy was broken. (This passes the “seem” test as it is written, so give credit for was/ linking verb. If the sentence read, “The Game Boy was broken by Sally.”, then it is passive voice for “Sally broke the Game Boy.”)
- 5) LV The Packers appear weak in defense.
- 6) LV Her guest seemed content after the conversation.
- 7) LV My new couch was colorful and comfortable.
- 8) AV We tasted the spicy chili.
- 9) LV Abe grew impatient.
- 10) LV T-Bone steak for supper sounds delicious.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) LV The chili tasted spicy.
- 12) LV Lila became sweaty after playing tennis.
- 13) LV Cindy was diligent in getting her homework done.
- 14) LV Ashley sounded angry in class.
- 15) AV Tomatoes grow in Alice’s garden.
- 16) AV Mark appeared at the top of the stairs.
- 17) LV The colors were faded in the photo.
- 18) AV Jade felt the softness of the pillow.
- 19) LV Wille is my best friend.
- 20) AV The taxi driver sounded his car’s horn.

### More Legalized Repairs 1d

Use the samples from *Grammar for Writing*, pp. 14-20 to 14-21 to help you follow this exercise's directions.

**I. Directions: Combine these sentences using a coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS).  
Use a different connector in each sentence.**

*Example: Mexico is a beautiful country. I would love to travel there someday.*

*Mexico is a beautiful country, and I would love to travel there someday.*

- 1) I love to watch hawks soar. I am afraid of heights.
- 2) I have to stop at the bank. I need to call my friend to say I will be late.
- 3) April is baking cookies. Joseph can't wait to try one.
- 4) Tom needs to hurry. He will be late.
- 5) Tomatoes are often called fruits. They are also called vegetables.

**II. Directions: Create one sentence by using only a semi-colon.**

- 6) James enjoys watching TV. Petros thinks it is a waste of time.
- 7) Math is fun. Reading is even more fun.

**III. Directions: Create one sentence by using a semi-colon plus a connector.**

- 8) My mother is an excellent cook. My dad is even better. (however)
- 9) Wear your warmest coat. Take your wind-proof gloves and hat. (in addition)
- 10) Tao can vacuum the carpeting. Paulo can finish the laundry. (meanwhile)

**IV. Directions: Create one sentence by insert these dependent connectors,  
so the meaning is clear. Use correct punctuation.**

- 11) It was raining. The football game went on as scheduled. (although)
- 12) The car swerved dangerously. The front tire suddenly went flat. (because)
- 13) Tom called to invite me to a movie. I was in the shower. (when)

### More Legalized Repairs 1d - KEY

Use the samples from *Grammar for Writing*, pp. 14-19 to 14-20 to help you follow this exercise's directions.

YOUR ANSWERS MAY VARY

#### I. Directions: Combine these sentences using a coordinating conjunction (FAN BOYS). Use a different connector in each sentence.

- 1) I love to watch hawks soar. I am afraid of heights.  
*I love to watch hawks soar, but I am afraid of heights.*
- 2) I have to stop at the bank. I need to call my friend to say I will be late.  
*I have to stop at the bank, so I need to call my friend to say I will be late.*
- 3) April is baking cookies. Joseph can't wait to try one.  
*April is baking cookies, and Joseph can't wait to try one.*
- 4) Tom needs to hurry. He will be late.  
*Tom needs to hurry, or he will be late. (for)*
- 5) Tomatoes are often called fruits. They are also called vegetables.  
*Tomatoes are often called fruits, yet they are also called vegetables. (but).*

#### II. Directions: Create one sentence by using only a semi-colon.

- 6) James enjoys TV. Petros thinks it is a waste of time.  
*James enjoys watching TV; Petros thinks it is a waste of time.*
- 7) Math is fun. Reading is even more fun.  
*Math is fun; reading is even more fun..*

#### III. Directions: Create one sentence by using a semi-colon plus a connector.

- 8) My mother is an excellent cook. My dad is even better. (however)  
*My mother is an excellent cook; however, my dad is even better.*
- 9) Wear your warmest coat. Take your wind-proof gloves and hat. (in addition)  
*Wear your warmest coat; in addition, take your wind-proof gloves and hat.*
- 10) Tao can vacuum the carpeting. Paulo can finish the laundry. (meanwhile)  
*Tao can vacuum the carpeting; meanwhile, Paulo can finish the laundry.*

#### IV. Directions: Create one sentence by insert these dependent connectors, so the meaning is clear. Use correct punctuation.

- 11) It was raining. The football game went on as scheduled. (although)  
*Although it was raining, the football game went on as scheduled.*
- 12) The car swerved dangerously. The front tire suddenly went flat. (because)  
*The car swerved dangerously because the front tire suddenly went flat.*
- 13) Tom called to invite me to a movie. I was in the shower. (when)  
*When Tom called to invite me to a movie, I was in the shower. – OR –  
Tom called to invite me to a movie when I was in the shower.*

Choosing Between A and An  
(Adjectives & Adverbs 8)

Directions: Please complete the following sentences using a or an.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ apple is good for you.     ***An apple is good for you.***

- 1) It can be boring to wear \_\_\_\_\_ uniform.
- 2) Summer is \_\_\_\_\_ excellent time to learn to swim.
- 3) I wish I were \_\_\_\_\_ heir to a fortune.
- 4) Don't let studying become \_\_\_\_\_ afterthought.
- 5) You need \_\_\_\_\_ office by the ocean!
- 6) Have you ever heard \_\_\_\_\_ ukulele?
- 7) The biggest bird today is \_\_\_\_\_ ostrich.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ eggplant is a pretty purple color.
- 9) An Eskimo might live in \_\_\_\_\_ igloo during a hunting trip.
- 10) Anna's eyes are \_\_\_\_\_ unique shade of green.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Who will be first to see \_\_\_\_\_ robin this spring?
- 12) Sage is \_\_\_\_\_ herb used at Thanksgiving.
- 13) I am reading \_\_\_\_\_ historical novel, and it is wonderful.
- 14) She didn't like feeling like \_\_\_\_\_ failure.
- 15) Different civilizations use \_\_\_\_\_ alphabet different from ours.
- 16) Don't act like \_\_\_\_\_ ape.
- 17) He has \_\_\_\_\_ energy I admire.
- 18) Suki is \_\_\_\_\_ hippo from India.
- 19) Is that \_\_\_\_\_ usual shade of green?
- 20) Were you ever asked to join \_\_\_\_\_ union where you have worked?

◆ Check your work.

Choosing Between A and An  
(Adjectives & Adverbs 8)

Directions: Please complete the following sentences using a or an.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ apple is good for you. ***An apple is good for you.***

- 1) It can be boring to wear \_ a \_ uniform. a
- 2) Summer is \_ an\_\_ excellent time to learn to swim.
- 3) I wish I were \_\_ an \_\_ heir to a fortune.
- 4) Don't let studying become \_ an \_ afterthought.
- 5) You need \_ an \_ office by the ocean!
- 6) Have you ever heard \_ a \_\_ ukulele?
- 7) The biggest bird today is \_ an \_\_ ostrich.
- 8) \_\_\_ An \_\_\_ eggplant is a pretty purple color.
- 9) An Eskimo might live in \_ an \_\_ igloo during a hunting trip.
- 10) Anna's eyes are \_\_ a \_\_\_ unique shade of green.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Who will be first to see \_\_ a \_\_\_ robin this spring?
- 12) Sage is \_\_ an \_\_ herb used at Thanksgiving.
- 13) I am reading \_\_ a \_\_\_ historical novel, and it is wonderful.
- 14) She didn't like feeling like \_\_ a \_\_ failure.
- 15) Different civilizations use \_\_ an \_\_ alphabet different from ours.
- 16) Don't act like \_ an \_\_ ape.
- 17) He has \_\_ an \_\_ energy I admire.
- 18) Suki is \_\_ a \_\_\_ hippo from India.
- 19) Is that \_\_ a\_ usual shade of green?
- 20) Were you ever asked to join \_ a \_\_ union where you have worked?

◆ Check your work.



## Negative Words

Directions: Rewrite the following sentences to correct errors in the use of negatives. Some sentences may be correct; if this is true, write correct. There is more than one way to make the sentences correct.

Example: (Wrong) Tad had never seen no purple pandas.  
(Correct) Tad had never seen any purple pandas. [Change “no” to “any.”]  
(Or – also correct) Tad had seen no purple pandas. [Remove “never.”]

1) Their training workshops are hardly never valuable.

---

2) The boss can't never rely on their completing a report on time.

---

3) There is never no such thing as a stupid question.

---

4) Have you never gone nowhere on a special vacation?

---

5) That work team hardly ever asks for help or extra time on a project.

---

6) When a customer complains, that manager doesn't never do anything to help.

---

7) They hadn't no idea about the difficulty between you and me.

---

8) Speaking for her, we hardly never asked for more cooperation.

---

9) Joni didn't want to use none of her paycheck to fund her car repairs.

---

10) The technology team, Harry and I, barely made any decisions.

---

◆ Check your work.

## Negative Words - KEY

Directions: Rewrite the following sentences to correct errors in the use of negatives. Some sentences may be correct; if this is true, write correct. There is more than one way to make the sentences correct.

Example: (Wrong) Tad had never seen no purple pandas.  
(Correct) Tad had never seen any purple pandas. [Change “no” to “any.”  
(Or – also correct) Tad had seen no purple pandas. [Remove “never.”]

Answers may vary. (Try to maintain the same meaning as the original sentence.)

1) Their training workshops are hardly never valuable.

*Their training workshops are hardly ever valuable.*

2) The boss can't never rely on their completing a report on time.

*The boss can't ever rely on their completing a report on time.*

*The boss can never rely on their completing a report on time.*

3) There is never no such thing as a stupid question.

*There is never any such thing as a stupid question.*

*There is no such thing as a stupid question.*

4) Have you never gone nowhere on a special vacation?

*Have you never gone anywhere on a special vacation?*

*Have you gone nowhere on a special vacation?*

5) That work team hardly ever asks for help or extra time on a project.

*Correct*

6) When a customer complains, that manager doesn't never do nothing to help.

*When a customer complains, that manager doesn't ever do anything to help.*

*When a customer complains, that manager does nothing to help.*

7) They hadn't no idea about the difficulty between you and me.

*They had no idea about the difficulty between you and me.*

*They hadn't any idea about the difficulty between you and me.*

8) Speaking for her, we hardly never asked for more cooperation.

*Speaking for her, we hardly ever asked for more cooperation.*

*Speaking for her, we hardly asked for more cooperation.*

9) Joni didn't want to use none of her paycheck to fund her car repairs.

*Joni didn't want to use any of her paycheck to fund her car repairs.*

*Joni wanted to use none of her paycheck to fund her car repairs.*

10) The technology team, Harry and I, barely made any decisions.

*Correct*

## Practice Identifying Nouns - 1

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring.
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month.
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed.
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot.
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs.
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer.
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight?
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car?
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Nouns - Key

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3) (*Discuss why "college" is really the only noun, but give credit for the entire title of the college as a noun.*)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)  
(*Same reason as #3.*)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring. (2)
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month. (3)
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed. (2)
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot. (2)
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs. (4)
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer. (5)
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight? (1)
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car? (1)
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing. (3)
- ◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Nouns - 1

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring.
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month.
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed.
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot.
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs.
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer.
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight?
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car?
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Nouns - Key

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3) (*Discuss why "college" is really the only noun, but give credit for the entire title of the college as a noun.*)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)  
(*Same reason as #3.*)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring. (2)
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month. (3)
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed. (2)
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot. (2)
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs. (4)
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer. (5)
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight? (1)
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car? (1)
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing. (3)
- ◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Nouns - 1

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring.
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month.
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed.
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot.
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs.
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer.
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight?
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car?
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Practice Identifying Nouns - Key

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following each sentence indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My dog Sadie is a loyal companion. (3)

- 1) Spring is the time to plant flowers and shrubs. (4)
- 2) The tulips in my neighbor's garden are from Holland. (3)
- 3) Fox Valley Technical College helps students in many ways. (3) (*Discuss why "college" is really the only noun, but give credit for the entire title of the college as a noun.*)
- 4) Both my sister and niece will visit me this weekend. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student wrote a country western song that became a hit. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Fox River Valley is a great place for museums, concerts, and shopping. (5)  
(*Same reason as #3.*)
- 7) Mai registered for GOAL math and reading during summer school. (4)
- 8) The delicious pizza was loaded with cheese, sausage, mushrooms, and onions. (5)
- 9) All of the people in my neighborhood have become good friends. (3)
- 10) I'm wearing my red sweater, jeans, and a shirt this Friday. (4)
- ◆ Stop here check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring. (2)
- 12) One of the instructors is going to Ireland in a month. (3)
- 13) Set the alarm clock before you go to bed. (2)
- 14) The rusty nail injured her foot. (2)
- 15) Julio checked out many books from the library. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most insects have wings, antennae, and six legs. (4)
- 17) My brother Tao and his family are coming for a visit next summer. (5)
- 18) Can you drive to the football game tonight? (1)
- 19) Have you ever driven a fast, red sports car? (1)
- 20) The Fox River Mall has several stores that sell clothing. (3)
- ◆ Check your work.



## Nouns 2

- Directions: A. Underline all the nouns in the sentences below.  
B. Capitalize the proper nouns.

Example: My friend travis lives on mercer street.  
                  T                  M      S  
My friend travis lives on mercer street.

- 1) My dog gracie is a lovable golden retriever who enjoys playing with her toys.
- 2) Thomas edison invented the light bulb, the phonograph, and many other things.
- 3) The recent hurricanes have created so much damage and unhappiness for so many.
- 4) Fall is here for everyone to enjoy the colors of the leaves and crispness in the air.
- 5) Joe's parents are going to the badger game this saturday.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) My sister is going on vacation to mexico in june.
- 7) Many of our lakes were named for explorers.
- 8) Christopher columbus really didn't discover america.
- 9) One of my favorite movies is *gone with the wind*.
- 10) Eating cheerios is a good way to start your day.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Hunting season is upon us, and soon the deer will be running frantically through the woods.
- 12) Helena's favorite subjects are mathematics and english.
- 13) While camping in the rockies, we saw wildlife of all kinds.
- 14) On my trip to europe, I hope to visit rome, paris, and madrid.
- 15) One of the dreams of many children is to go to the moon.
- ◆ Check your work.

Nouns 2 - KEY

- Directions: A. Underline all the nouns in the sentences below.  
B. Capitalize the proper nouns.

Example: My friend travis lives on mercer street.  
                  T                  M          S  
My friend travis lives on mercer street.

- 1) My <sup>G</sup> dog gracie is a lovable golden retriever who enjoys playing with her toys.  
                  E  
2) Thomas edison invented the light bulb, the phonograph, and many other things.  
3) The recent hurricanes have created so much damage and unhappiness for so many.  
4) Fall is here for everyone to enjoy the colors of the leaves and crispness in the air.  
  B  S  
5) Joe's parents are going to the badger game this saturday.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) My sister is going on vacation to <sup>M</sup> mexico in <sup>J</sup> june.  
7) Many of our lakes were named for explorers.  
  C  A  
8) Christopher columbus really didn't discover america.  
  G  W  
9) One of my favorite movies is *gone with the* wind.  
  C  
10) Eating cheerios is a good way to start your day.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Hunting season is upon us, and soon the deer will be running frantically through the woods.  
12) Helena's favorite subjects are mathematics and <sup>E</sup> english.  
  R  
13) While camping in the rockies, we saw wildlife of all kinds.  
  E  R          P          M  
14) On my trip to europe, I hope to visit rome, paris, and madrid.  
15) One of the dreams of many children is to go to the moon.

### Nouns 3

- Directions: **a. Underline** each noun in the following sentences.  
**b. Label them C (common) or P (proper).**

	P	C	C
Example:	<u>Luis</u> ,	a fine <u>carpenter</u> ,	is also my <u>brother</u> .

- 1) Honolulu, the chief city and capitol of Hawaii, is a coastal city.
  - 2) Sunflower, Empire, Hawkeye, and Tar Heel are the nicknames of which states?
  - 3) Liza learned the fact from the book I gave to her.
  - 4) Rainbow Natural Bridge is in the wild, mountainous part of southern Utah.
  - 5) Although the abacus is an early calculating device, it is still used in China.
  - 6) The Declaration of Independence, often called the birth certificate of the United States, is in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.
  - 7) Were Tennyson, Gladstone, Lincoln, Poe, Chopin, and Mendelssohn born in the same year?
  - 8) The Great Chicago Fire is said to have been started by Mrs. O'Leary's cow.
  - 9) As they exited the airplane, the visitors were greeted by the Eskimos.
  - 10) A window washer takes one whole year to clean the windows at the Empire State Building.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) A fund set up by John D. Rockefeller enabled people to restore Williamsburg, Virginia, to its original charm.
  - 12) Thomas Jefferson, who signed the Declaration of Independence, was described as a giver, a molder, and a builder.
  - 13) The interstate ran from Cincinnati, Ohio to Lexington, Kentucky.
  - 14) Venezuela was the birthplace to Bolivar, a great leader of South Africa.
  - 15) The Dog Star, also known as Sirius, is the brightest star in the heavens.
  - 16) Labrador retrievers make wonderful additions to many families.
  - 17) The snow fell on the Highlands of Scotland.
  - 18) The fire engine of Company #9 was bright and shiny.
  - 19) Robert Louis Stevenson wrote great adventure stories.
  - 20) The little girl sat by the brook with her dogs, Luther and Jonas.

## Nouns 3 - KEY

- 1.) Honolulu (P), city (C), capitol (C) Hawaii (P), city (C)
- 2.) Sunflower (P), Empire (P), Hawkeye (P), Tar Heel (P), nicknames (C), states(C)
- 3.) Liza (P), fact (C), book (C)
- 4.) Rainbow Natural Bridge (P), part (C), Utah (P)
- 5.) abacus (C), device (C), China (P)
- 6.) Declaration of Independence (P), certificate (C), United States (P), Philadelphia (P), Pennsylvania (P)
- 7.) Tennyson (P), Gladstone (P), Lincoln(P), Poe (P), Chopin (P), Mendelssohn (P), year (C)
- 8.) Great Chicago Fire (P), Mrs. O'Leary's (Proper adj – needs caps), cow (C)
- 9.) airplane (C), visitor (C), Eskimos (P)
- 10.) washer (C), year (C), windows (C), Empire State Building (P)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11.) fund (C), John D. Rockefeller (P), people (C), Williamsburg (P), Virginia (P), charm (C)
- 12.) Thomas Jefferson (P), Declaration of Independence (P), giver (C), molder (C), builder (C)
- 13.) interstate (C), Cincinnati (P), Ohio (P), Lexington (P), Kentucky (P)
- 14.) Venezuela (P), birthplace (C), Bolivar (P), leader (C), South Africa (P)
- 15.) Dog Star (P), Sirius (P), star (C), heavens (C)
- 16.) retrievers (C), additions (C), families (C)
- 17.) snow (C), Highlands of Scotland (P)
- 18.) engine (C), Company #9 (P)
- 19.) Robert Louis Stevenson (P), stories (C)
- 20.) girl (C), brook (C), dog (C), Luther (P), Jonas (P)

### Practice Identifying Nouns - 4

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following the first five sentences indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My friend Veronica is a great soccer player. (3)

- 1) Fall is the season for raking leaves and planting flower bulbs. (6)
  - 2) The bushes in my neighbor's yard are from Georgia. (3)
  - 3) The Valley Transit System provides transportation for many students without cars. (4)
  - 4) My brother and his family are moving to Florida. (3)
  - 5) A GOAL student won a scholarship for two years. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Performing Arts Center hosts concerts, plays, and speakers.
  - 7) Tessa is taking both GOAL math and reading.
  - 8) I like meat, cheese, lettuce, olives, and hot sauce on my tacos.
  - 9) Many of my friends from high school have moved to other cities.
  - 10) I'm serving turkey, mashed potatoes, and green bean casserole for dinner.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring.
  - 12) Susanne is going to France to study music next semester.
  - 13) Remember to lock the door when you leave for school.
  - 14) Stepping on a rusty nail caused an infection in Tina's foot.
  - 15) Juanita likes walking in the rain.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most spiders spin webs and eat insects.
  - 17) My sister Mai and her friends are going to a concert in Milwaukee.
  - 18) Can you have the car tonight?
  - 19) I like driving fast.
  - 20) How many shopping centers are located in the Fox River Valley?
- ◆ Check your work.

### Practice Identifying Nouns 4 - Key

Directions: Read the sentences and circle each of the nouns. The number in ( ) following the first five sentences indicates the number of nouns in the sentence.

Example: My friend Veronica is a great soccer player. (3)

- 1) Fall is the season for raking leaves and planting flower bulbs. (6)
- 2) The bushes in my neighbor's yard are from Georgia. (3)
- 3) The Valley Transit System provides transportation for many students without cars.(4)  
*(Discuss why "system" is really the only noun, but give credit for the entire title of the college as a noun.)*
- 4) My brother and his family are moving to Florida. (3)
- 5) A GOAL student won a scholarship for two years. (3)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The Performing Arts Center hosts concerts, plays, and speakers.  
*(Same reason as #3.)*
- 7) Tessa is taking both GOAL math and reading.
- 8) I like meat, cheese, lettuce, olives, and hot sauce on my tacos.
- 9) Many of my friends from high school have moved to other cities.
- 10) I'm serving turkey, mashed potatoes, and green bean casserole for dinner.
- ◆ Stop here check your work.
- 11) Many students are graduating this spring.
- 12) Susanne is going to France to study music next semester.
- 13) Remember to lock the door when you leave for school.
- 14) Stepping on a rusty nail caused an infection in Tina's foot.
- 15) Juanita likes walking in the rain.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 16) Most spiders spin webs and eat insects.
- 17) My sister Mai and her friends are going to a concert in Milwaukee.
- 18) Can you have the car tonight?
- 19) I like driving fast.
- 20) How many shopping centers are located in the Fox River Valley? *(Same reason as #3.)*
- ◆ Check your work.

## Parallel Structure 1

Directions: Please correct the following sentences so they have parallel structure.

Example: I love to ~~run~~, walking, and lifting weights.

I love running, walking, and lifting weights. [all are –ing nouns]

- 1) Sara has a high fever and a throat that is sore.
- 2) On hot days I close the windows, turn on the air conditioning, and am complaining a lot.
- 3) My teacher wears loud shirts, shoes that are scuffed, and wrinkled slacks.
- 4) Houa usually braids her hair or is putting it up in a bun.
- 5) Interesting work is as important to me as pay that is good.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) On the highway, traveling too slowly is almost as bad as to drive too fast.
- 7) We live in a fast-paced world of cell phones, computers, and machines that fax documents.
- 8) Javier is strong, intelligent, and has the ability to understand others.
- 9) When Marta begins to speak, she blinks her eyes, adjusts her glasses, and her head nods.
- 10) The twins hopped, skipped, and jump off the ottoman.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My puppy loves to run after squirrels, to eat the cats' food, and riding in the car.
- 12) The woman in the velvet jacket, slacks that are red, and artist's beret is my aunt.
- 13) Anna gave her son some aspirin, tucked him into bed, and was pouring him some tea.
- 14) Roast turkey, sweet potatoes, and pie made from pumpkins are traditional Thanksgiving foods.
- 15) On Saturdays we work in the yard, shop for groceries, and going to the movies.

## Parallel Structure 1 - KEY

Directions: Please correct the following sentences so they have parallel structure.

Example: I love to ~~run~~, walking, and lifting weights.

I love running, walking, and lifting weights. [all are – ing nouns]

***There may be more ways to correct these sentences. If you have questions about your answers, check with an instructor.***

- 1) Sara has a high fever and a sore throat.
- 2) On hot days I close the windows, turn on the air conditioning, and complain a lot.
- 3) My teacher wears loud shirts, scuffed shoes, and wrinkled slacks.
- 4) Houa usually braids her hair or puts it up in a bun.
- 5) Interesting work is as important to me as good pay.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) On the highway, traveling too slowly is almost as bad as driving too fast.
- 7) We live in a fast-paced world of cell phones, computers, and fax machines.
- 8) Javier is strong, intelligent, and understanding.
- 9) When Marta begins to speak, she blinks her eyes, adjusts her glasses, and nods her head.
- 10) The twins hopped, skipped, and jumped off the ottoman.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) My puppy loves to run after squirrels, to eat the cats' food, and to ride in the car.
- 12) The woman in the velvet jacket, red slacks, and artist's beret is my aunt.
- 13) Anna gave her son some aspirin, tucked him into bed, and poured him some tea.
- 14) Roast turkey, sweet potatoes, and pumpkin pies are traditional Thanksgiving foods.
- 15) On Saturdays we work in the yard, shop for groceries, and go to the movies.



## Parallel Structure 2

Directions: Please correct the following sentences so they have parallel structure.

Example: Marco likes playing football, riding dirt bikes, and ~~to hike~~.

Marco likes playing football, riding dirt bikes, and hiking. [all are –ing nouns]

- 1) James has a red Fiat and a motorcycle that is bright purple.
  - 2) In winter I turn on the furnace, wear lots of layers, and am shivering a lot.
  - 3) My neighbor has ragged shoes, slacks that are wrinkled, and dirty shirts.
  - 4) Houa usually works out at the gym or is playing his guitar.
  - 5) My son loves to eat ice cream, to go to the zoo, and playing on the playground.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The rain pounded on the roof, fills the rain barrel, and left the roads impassable.
  - 7) Morgan is smart, funny, and has a big heart.
  - 8) Carmen has brown eyes and a face that is beautiful.
  - 9) I am hungry for potatoes on the grill, pie from my mom, and Susie's famous baked beans.
  - 10) When people are nervous, they sweat, pace, and their words are hard to get out.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The man in the tan sweater, shoes that are black leather, and rain coat is my teacher.
  - 12) Stay calm, focused, and keep you cool.
  - 13) Spring is warm, full of promise and waiting for flowers to bloom.
  - 14) In the winter we ski, build snowmen, and hibernating until spring.
  - 15) Researching for a paper and to write it properly are important to me.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Parallel Structure 2 - KEY

Directions: Please correct the following sentences so they have parallel structure.

Example: Marco likes playing football, riding dirt bikes, and ~~to hike~~.

Marco likes playing football, riding dirt bikes, and hiking. [all are – ing nouns]

- 1) James has a red Fiat and a purple motorcycle.
  - 2) In winter I turn on the furnace, wear lots of layers, and shiver a lot.
  - 3) My neighbor has ragged shoes, wrinkled slacks, and dirty shirts.
  - 4) Houa usually works out at the gym or plays his guitar.
  - 5) My son loves to eat ice cream, to go to the zoo, and to play on the playground.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) The rain pounded on the roof, filled the rain barrel, and left the roads impassable.
  - 7) Morgan is smart, funny, and big-hearted.
  - 8) Carmen has brown eyes and a beautiful face.
  - 9) I am hungry for potatoes on the grill, pie from my mom, and famous baked beans from Susie. [or grilled potatoes, my mom's pie, and Susie's famous ...]
  - 10) When people are nervous, they sweat, pace, and mumble. [or slur their words, etc.]
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The man in the tan sweater, black leather shoes, and rain coat is my teacher.
  - 12) Stay calm, focused, and cool.
  - 13) Spring is warm, full of promise and blooming flowers.
  - 14) In the winter we ski, build snowmen, and hibernate until spring.
  - 15) Researching for a paper and writing it properly are important to me.

## PARTS OF SPEECH REVIEW

<b>GRAMMAR REFERENCE</b>		
Part of Speech	What It Does	Some Examples
<b>NOUN</b>	Names people, places, things, ideas, feelings, qualities -----	<i>Amanda, friends, Ohio, desk, store, liberty, happiness, courage</i>
Common	Names a group of people, places, or things in general	<i>friend, school, store</i> <i>(liberty, happiness, courage)</i>
Proper	Gives a name to a specific person, place, thing (capitalized)	<i>Amanda, Badger School, Macy's</i>
Concrete	Can be seen or touched	<i>book, table, cloud, car</i>
Abstract	Cannot be seen or touched	<i>equality, courage, confusion, honesty</i>
<b>PRONOUN</b>	Used in place of a noun -----	
Personal	Refers to a noun already mentioned	<i>I, you, he, him, we, us, them, etc.</i>
Possessive	Shows ownership	<i>my, mine, his, her, our, ours, etc.</i>
Interrogative	Asks a question	<i>Who? Whom? Whose? Which?</i>
Relative	Refers a group of words to a noun	<i>friend who always listens, etc.</i>
Demonstrative	Points out people or things	<i>this, that, these, those</i>
Indefinite	Refers to a person, place, thing that isn't definite	<i>each, anybody, everything, both, either, another, all, none, etc.</i>
<b>VERB</b>	Tells what a subject <u>is</u> or <u>does</u> -----	
Action	Refers to mental or physical action	<i>jump, call, know, help, create</i>
Linking	Ties subject to a word that identifies or describes it	<i>was, were, seem, become, feel, etc.</i> <i>Jane is my friend. She looks wise.</i>
Helping	A verb that helps in the formation of another verb (helping verb + main verb = verb phrase)	<i>forms of be, can, do, have, may, ought, shall, will (must have gone, should help, am studying, etc.)</i>

*This table continued on the next page.*

## Grammar Reference (continued)

Part of Speech	What It Does	Some Examples
<b>ADJECTIVE</b>	Describes nouns and pronouns  Tells <u>how many</u> , <u>what kind</u> , <u>which one</u> )	<i>One large present felt heavier.</i> <i>This car is too slow.</i> <i>Work clothes should be practical.</i>
<b>ADVERB</b>	Describes action verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs  Tells <u>how</u> , <u>when</u> , <u>where</u> , <u>to what extent</u>	We drove <i>very carefully</i> in the storm. Let's study <i>later</i> . The dog wants to go <i>outside</i> . They seem <i>really</i> intelligent. It has been a <i>rather</i> hectic week.
<b>PREPOSITION</b>	Shows relationship between two words in a sentence  ----- The <u>object</u> of a preposition is the noun or pronoun that follows it.  A <u>prepositional phrase</u> is a group of words that includes a preposition and its object	<i>at, of, on, in, for, to, with, near, etc.</i>  our friends <i>in Green Bay</i> painted <i>by a famous artist</i>  <i>just between you and me</i> directions <i>to the haunted house</i> washing dishes <i>after lunch</i>
<b>CONJUNCTION</b>	Joins words, phrases, clauses, and sentences  ----- Coordinating Remember 2 and 3-letter "fan boys"  Subordinating Introduces a dependent clause  Correlative Used in pairs to join words, etc.	<i>for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so</i>  <i>after, if, because, until, as, before</i>  <i>either-or, neither-nor, both-and, etc.</i>
<b>INTERJECTION</b>	Expresses emotion and is grammatically unrelated to other words in a sentence.	<i>Help! I'm stuck!</i> <i>Wow--you're amazing!</i> <i>Oh, I'm sure she'll be elected.</i>

### Plurals/Possessives #1

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. boat			
3. march			
4. wall			
5. chairman			
6. secretary			
7. boss			
8. ox			
9. son			
10. college			
11. business			
12. ticket			
13. yesterday			
14. community			
15. night			
16. mouse			
17. clock			
18. Jones			

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #1

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural <u>NO</u> Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. boat	<u>boat's</u> (+ a noun) anchor	two <u>boats</u>	two <u>boats'</u> anchors (2)
3. march	the <u>march's</u> tempo	two <u>marches</u>	two <u>marches'</u> tempos (2)
4. wall	the <u>wall's</u> color	four <u>walls</u>	four <u>walls'</u> colors (2)
5. chairman	the <u>chairman's</u> job	two <u>chairmen</u>	two <u>chairmen's</u> jobs (3)
6. secretary	the <u>secretary's</u> list	many <u>secretaries</u>	the <u>secretaries'</u> lists (2)
7. boss	my <u>boss's</u> desk	many <u>bosses</u>	my <u>bosses'</u> desks (2)
8. ox	the <u>ox's</u> pen	a team of <u>oxen</u>	the <u>oxen's</u> pens (3)
9. son	my <u>son's</u> friend	my three <u>sons</u>	my <u>sons'</u> friends (2)
10. college	the <u>college's</u> address	those <u>colleges</u>	those <u>colleges'</u> addresses (2)
11. business	this <u>business's</u> product	these <u>businesses</u>	<u>businesses'</u> products (2)
12. ticket	the <u>ticket's</u> date	two <u>tickets</u>	two <u>tickets'</u> dates (2)
13. yesterday	<u>yesterday's</u> weather	too many <u>yesterdays</u>	<u>yesterdays'</u> memories (2)
14. community	the <u>community's</u> mayor	two <u>communities</u>	two <u>communities'</u> mayors (2)
15. night	the <u>night's</u> starry sky	several <u>nights</u>	several <u>nights'</u> work (2)
16. mouse	a <u>mouse's</u> cheese	three blind <u>mice</u>	three <u>mice's</u> cheese (3)
17. clock	the <u>clock's</u> face	two alarm <u>clocks</u>	two <u>clocks'</u> faces (2)
18. Jones	Mrs. <u>Jones's</u> cat	the <u>Joneses</u>	the <u>Joneses'</u> cat (2)

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #2

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. study			
3. child			
4. passenger			
5. activity			
6. switch			
7. lady			
8. porch			
9. Mary			
10. comma			
11. bush			
12. holiday			
13. house			
14. fireman			
15. deer			
16. potato			
17. day			
18. director			

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #2

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. study	<u>study's</u> (+ a noun) desk	two <u>studies</u>	those <u>studies'</u> chairs (2)
3. child	the <u>child's</u> fever	four <u>children</u>	the <u>children's</u> fevers (3)
4. passenger	the <u>passenger's</u> bag	two <u>passengers</u>	these <u>passengers'</u> bags 2
5. activity	the <u>activity's</u> due date	many <u>activities</u>	the <u>activities'</u> due dates 2
6. switch	the <u>switch's</u> cover plate	many <u>switches</u>	<u>switches'</u> cover plates 2
7. lady	a <u>lady's</u> purse	two <u>ladies</u>	two <u>ladies'</u> purses (2)
8. porch	the <u>porch's</u> swing	three <u>porches</u>	these <u>porches'</u> swings 2
9. Mary	<u>Mary's</u> friend	three <u>Marys</u>	two <u>Marys'</u> friends 2
10. comma	this <u>comma's</u> rule	these <u>commas</u>	these <u>commas'</u> rules 2
11. bush	this <u>bush's</u> color	two <u>bushes</u>	those <u>bushes'</u> colors 2
12. holiday	that <u>holiday's</u> date	many <u>holidays</u>	many <u>holidays'</u> dates 2
13. house	my <u>house's</u> roof	two <u>houses</u>	these <u>houses'</u> roofs (2)
14. fireman	the <u>fireman's</u> hat	several <u>firemen</u>	<u>firemen's</u> hats (3)
15. deer	the <u>deer's</u> white tail	three <u>deer</u>	those <u>deer's</u> white tails 3
16. potato	a <u>potato's</u> skin	two <u>potatoes</u>	<u>potatoes'</u> skins (2)
17. day	the <u>day's</u> agenda	these <u>days</u>	several <u>days'</u> agendas 2
18. director	a <u>director's</u> chair	these <u>directors</u>	two <u>directors'</u> chairs 2

◆ Have an instructor check your work.



Plurals/Possessives #3

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. party			
3. cross			
4. folder			
5. grass			
6. box			
7. tray			
8. teacher			
9. aunt			
10. David			
11. city			
12. neighbor			
13. hour			
14. Martha			
15. project			
16. book			
17. goose			
18. sky			

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #3

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. party	<u>party's</u> (+ a noun) date	two <u>parties</u>	those <u>parties'</u> date (2)
3. cross	the <u>cross's</u> shape	two <u>crosses</u>	two <u>crosses'</u> shapes (2)
4. folder	the <u>folder's</u> label	four <u>folders</u>	these <u>folders'</u> labels (2)
5. grass	the <u>grass's</u> length	golf course <u>grasses</u>	<u>grasses'</u> seeds (2)
6. box	the <u>box's</u> cover	many <u>boxes</u>	the <u>boxes'</u> covers (2)
7. tray	my <u>tray's</u> pattern	many <u>trays</u>	these <u>trays'</u> shapes 2
8. teacher	the <u>teacher's</u> pen	a team of <u>teachers</u>	the <u>teachers'</u> work room 2
9. aunt	my <u>aunt's</u> friend	my three <u>aunts</u>	my <u>aunts'</u> husbands (2)
10. David	<u>David's</u> address	those <u> Davids</u>	<u>Davids'</u> addresses (2)
11. city	this <u>city's</u> park	these <u>cities</u>	these <u>cities'</u> locations 2
12. neighbor	the <u>neighbor's</u> dog	two <u>neighbors</u>	those <u>neighbors'</u> dogs 2
13. hour	this <u>hour's</u> weather	too many <u>hours</u>	thes <u>hours'</u> classes (2)
14. Martha	<u>Martha's</u> sister	two <u>Marthas</u>	two <u>Marthas'</u> sisters (2)
15. project	the <u>project's</u> deadline	several <u>projects</u>	these <u>projects'</u> deadlines 2
16. book	a <u>book's</u> cover	three <u>books</u>	two <u>books'</u> covers (2)
17. goose	the <u>goose's</u> mate	two <u>geese</u>	three <u>geese's</u> mates (3)
18. sky	the <u>sky's</u> color	day & night <u>skies</u>	those <u>skies'</u> colors (2)

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #4

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. country			
3. watch			
4. book			
5. class			
6. donkey			
7. paper			
8. company			
9. foot			
10. man			
11. dress			
12. file			
13. luxury			
14. ski			
15. woman			
16. baby			
17. pencil			
18. rabbi			

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

Plurals/Possessives #4

Directions: Complete the chart as directed.

Singular	Singular Possessive Rule 1	Plural NO Apostrophes	Plural Possessive Rule 2 or 3
1. friend (one)	(one) friend's car	(two) friends	(two) friends' car [rule 2]
2. country	<u>country's</u> (+ a noun) flag	two <u>countries</u>	three <u>countries'</u> flags (2)
3. watch	the <u>watch's</u> band	two <u>watches</u>	these <u>watches'</u> bands (2)
4. book	the <u>book's</u> binding	four <u>books</u>	those <u>books'</u> bindings (2)
5. class	the <u>class's</u> project	two <u>classes</u>	the <u>classes'</u> projects (2)
6. donkey	the <u>donkey's</u> tail	many <u>donkeys</u>	three <u>donkeys'</u> tails (2)
7. paper	my <u>paper's</u> title	many <u>papers</u>	my <u>papers'</u> titles (2)
8. company	the <u>company's</u> name	three <u>companies</u>	those <u>companies'</u> names (2)
9. foot	my <u>foot's</u> big toe	my two <u>feet</u>	my <u>feet's</u> big toes (3)
10. man	the <u>man's</u> address	those <u>men</u>	the <u>men's</u> addresses (3)
11. dress	this <u>dress's</u> size	these <u>dresses</u>	this <u>dresses'</u> sizes (2)
12. file	the <u>file's</u> date	two <u>files</u>	those <u>files'</u> dates (2)
13. luxury	<u>luxury's</u> cost	too many <u>luxuries</u>	<u>luxuries'</u> costs (2)
14. ski	the <u>ski's</u> binding	two <u>skis</u>	the <u>skis'</u> bindings (2)
15. woman	the <u>woman's</u> job	several <u>women</u>	the <u>women's</u> jobs (3)
16. baby	a <u>baby's</u> toy	three <u>babies</u>	many <u>babies'</u> toys (2)
17. pencil	the <u>pencil's</u> point	two blue <u>pencils</u>	these <u>pencils'</u> points (2)
18. rabbi	the <u>rabbi's</u> synagogue	three <u>rabbis</u>	two <u>rabbis'</u> synagogues 2

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

## PLURAL PRACTICE

Directions: Fill each blank with the plural form of the word in the parentheses.

Example: (boy) The four boys like to play baseball.

- 1) (box) We needed many \_\_\_\_\_ when we moved.
- 2) (deer) Three \_\_\_\_\_ crossed the road in front of our car.
- 3) (city) Several \_\_\_\_\_ in Wisconsin have fall festivals.
- 4) (piece) I couldn't do the puzzle because too many \_\_\_\_\_ were missing.
- 5) (alto) The choir had seven \_\_\_\_\_.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) (loaf) Grandma baked two \_\_\_\_\_ of bread.
- 7) (porch) There were three \_\_\_\_\_ on the old farmhouse.
- 8) (turkey) Aunt Rose cooked two \_\_\_\_\_ for Thanksgiving.
- 9) (potato) We served mashed \_\_\_\_\_ with gravy.
- 10) (Betty) There are two \_\_\_\_\_ in our class.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) (radish) Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ on your salad?
- 12) (company) Several \_\_\_\_\_ in our area are hiring new workers.
- 13) (trout) The fishermen each caught four \_\_\_\_\_ in the stream by our house.
- 14) (child) Let's take our three \_\_\_\_\_ to the park to play.
- 15) (committee) The \_\_\_\_\_ all meet on Thursdays.

◆ Check your work.

## PLURAL PRACTICE – Answer Key

Directions: Fill each blank with the plural form of the word in the parentheses.

Example: (boy) The four boys like to play baseball.

16) (box) We needed many boxes when we moved.

17) (deer) Three deer crossed the road in front of our car.

18) (city) Several cities in Wisconsin have fall festivals.

19) (piece) I couldn't do the puzzle because too many pieces were missing.

20) (alto) The choir had seven altos.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

21) (loaf) Grandma baked two loaves of bread.

22) (porch) There were three porches on the old farmhouse.

23) (turkey) Aunt Rose cooked two turkeys for Thanksgiving.

24) (potato) We served mashed potatoes with gravy.

25) (Betty) There are two Bettys in our class.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

26) (radish) Do you like radishes on your salad?

27) (company) Several companies in our area are hiring new workers.

28) (trout) The fishermen each caught four trout in the stream by our house.

29) (child) Let's take our three children to the park to play.

30) (committee) The committees all meet on Thursdays.

Plural OR Possessive Nouns 8  
(Plural or Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the noun. Determine whether the sentence needs a plural (P), a singular possessive (SP), or a plural possessive (PP).

Example: High weeds grow by those benches. (bench) *No noun; no apostrophe. (P)*  
N  
Those benches' seats need painting. (bench) *Yes, a noun; yes, apostrophe. (PP)*

- 1) P SP PP The boy down the street is happy with his six new \_\_\_\_\_. (puppy)
- 2) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ games are fun to play. (child)
- 3) P SP PP You will find \_\_\_\_\_ coat in the hall closet. (Marta)
- 4) P SP PP Juan, who has a beautiful voice, sings with \_\_\_\_\_ choir. (Appleton)
- 5) P SP PP We sat around the campfire and told ghost \_\_\_\_\_. (story)
- 6) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ questions were not answered. (people)
- 7) P SP PP These \_\_\_\_\_ bananas hung on the tree. (monkey)
- 8) P SP PP The snow blew and the \_\_\_\_\_ had a hard time finding food. (deer)
- 9) P SP PP My two \_\_\_\_\_ teachers are friends of my parents. (class)
- 10) P SP PP If your brother saves all his \_\_\_\_\_, they will soon become dollars. (nickel)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) P SP PP Would you please stop at the \_\_\_\_\_ entrance? (school)
- 12) P SP PP I am invited to the \_\_\_\_\_ famous backyard barbecue. (Johnston)
- 13) P SP PP My twin \_\_\_\_\_ toys are all over the nursery. (baby)
- 14) P SP PP The letter from my grandma arrived at \_\_\_\_\_ house. (Mary)
- 15) P SP PP George and Mary went fishing and caught several \_\_\_\_\_. (trout)
- 16) P SP PP My \_\_\_\_\_ car is a bright red Mustang. (brother-in-law)
- 17) P SP PP There were hundreds of \_\_\_\_\_ in the marsh. (mosquito)
- 18) P SP PP Both \_\_\_\_\_ were coming for a visit. (mother-in-law)
- 19) P SP PP Several \_\_\_\_\_ nests blew out of the tree in the storm. (squirrel)
- 20) P SP PP Our \_\_\_\_\_ are leaving for Italy next week. (cousin)

◆ Check your work.

Plural OR Possessive Nouns 8 - KEY  
(Plural or Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the noun. Determine whether the sentence needs a plural (P), a singular possessive (SP), or a plural possessive (PP).

Example: High weeds grow by those benches. (bench) *No noun; no apostrophe. (P)*  
N  
Those benches' seats need painting. (bench) *Yes, a noun; yes, apostrophe. (PP)*

- 1) **P** The boy down the street is happy with his six new puppies. (puppy)  
N
- 2) **PP** The children's **games** are fun to play. (child)  
N
- 3) **SP** You will find Marta's **coat** in the hall closet. (Marta)  
N
- 4) **SP** Juan, who has a beautiful voice, sings with Appleton's **choir**. (Appleton)  
N
- 5) **P** We sat around the campfire and told ghost stories. (story)  
N
- 6) **PP** The people's **questions** were not answered. (people)  
N
- 7) **PP** These monkeys' **bananas** hung on the tree. (monkey)  
N
- 8) **P** The snow blew and the deer had a hard time finding food. (deer)  
N
- 9) **PP** My two classes' **teachers** are friends of my parents. (class)  
N
- 10) **P** If your brother saves all his nickels, they will soon become dollars. (nickel)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) **SP** Would you please stop at the school's **entrance**? (school)  
N
- 12) **PP** I am invited to the Johnstons' famous backyard **barbecue**. (Johnston)  
N
- 13) **PP** My twin babies' **toys** are all over the nursery. (baby)  
N
- 14) **SP** The letter from my grandma arrived at Mary's **house**. (Mary)  
N
- 15) **P** George and Mary went fishing and caught several trout. (trout)  
N
- 16) **SP** My brother-in-law's **car** is a bright red Mustang. (brother-in-law)  
N
- 17) **P** There were hundreds of mosquitoes in the marsh. (mosquito)  
N
- 18) **P** Both mothers-in-law were coming for a visit. (mother-in-law)  
N
- 19) **PP** Several squirrels' **nests** blew out of the tree in the storm. (squirrel)  
N
- 20) **P** Our cousins are leaving for Italy next week. (cousin)



Plural AND Possessive Nouns 9  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Underline the correct choice.

Example: Many (magazine's, magazines, magazines) covers at the public library were covered in plastic so they would not be ripped by careless (hand's, hands, hands).

- 1) Many (inventor's, inventors', inventors) attempted to build (machine's, machines', machines) that could fly.
  - 2) Those (dress's, dresses', dresses) designers work for some of (New York's, New Yorks', New Yorks) most famous fashion houses.
  - 3) I will spend my two (day's, days', days) vacation visiting famous (beach's, beaches', beaches).
  - 4) The (Ross's, Rosses', Rosses) live next door to the (city's, cities', cities) best family park.
  - 5) Our (nation's, nations', nations) capital is located in two different (state's, states', states).
  - 6) Few (reporter's, reporters', reporters) told the whole story about that (animal's, animals', animals) capture.
  - 7) There will be two (month's, months', months) delay on the new high (school's, schools', schools) completion date.
  - 8) The (raisin's, raisins', raisins) dry quickly in (California's, Californias', Californias) sun.
  - 9) All of the (book's, books', books) covers were damaged while still in the shipping (carton's, cartons', cartons).
  - 10) Some (squirrel's, squirrels', squirrels) nested in the (Miller's, Millers', Millers) tree.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Jessica's, Jessicas', Jessicas) children waded in the (wave's, waves', waves) at the edge of Lake Michigan
  - 12) We served our (sandwich's, sandwiches', sandwiches) on my (grandmother's, grandmothers', grandmothers) china plates.
  - 13) The (sun's, suns', suns) rays heated the inside of the (car's, cars', cars).
  - 14) All (flight's, flights', flights) to California were delayed for several (hour's, hours', hours).
  - 15) A (worker's, workers', workers) wallet was found on the (dock's, docks', docks) landing.
  - 16) The home (team's, teams', teams) score was higher than any of last (season's, seasons', seasons) games.
  - 17) The (coffee's, coffees', coffees) aroma drifted though the (room's, rooms', rooms) of their tiny house.
  - 18) All of our (family's, families', families) went camping at the state park near my (parent's, parents', parents) hometown.
  - 19) In the old west, many (town's, towns', towns) formed alongside the railroad (track's, tracks', tracks).
  - 20) A few of the (chair's, chairs', chairs) seat cushions were covered in powdered sugar after the children had a snack of milk and (doughnut's, doughnuts', doughnuts).

◆ Check your work.

Plural AND Possessive Nouns 9  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Underline the correct choice.

Example: Many (magazine's, magazines, magazines) covers at the public library were covered in plastic so they would not be ripped by careless (hand's, hands', hands).

- 1) Many (inventor's, inventors', inventors) attempted to build (machine's, machines', machines) that could fly.
  - 2) Those (dress's, dresses, dresses) designers work for some of (New York's, New Yorks', New Yorks) most famous fashion houses.
  - 3) I will spend my two (day's, days, days) vacation visiting famous (beach's, beaches', beaches).
  - 4) The (Ross's, Rosses', Rosses) live next door to the (city's, cities', cities) best family park.
  - 5) Our (nation's, nations', nations) capital is located in two different (state's, states', states).
  - 6) Few (reporter's, reporters', reporters) told the whole story about that (animal's, animals', animals) capture.
  - 7) There will be two (month's, months, months) delay on the new high (school's, schools', schools) completion date.
  - 8) The (raisin's, raisins', raisins) dry quickly in (California's, Californias', Californias) sun.
  - 9) All of the (book's, books, books) covers were damaged while still in the shipping (carton's, cartons', cartons).
  - 10) Some (squirrel's, squirrels', squirrels) nested in the (Miller's, Millers, Millers) tree.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Jessica's, Jessicas', Jessicas) children waded in the (wave's, waves', waves) at the edge of Lake Michigan
  - 12) We served our (sandwich's, sandwiches', sandwiches) on my (grandmother's, grandmothers', grandmothers) china plates.
  - 13) The (sun's, suns', suns) rays heated the inside of the (car's, cars', cars).
  - 14) All (flight's, flights', flights) to California were delayed for several (hour's, hours', hours).
  - 15) A (worker's, workers', workers) wallet was found on the (dock's, docks', docks) landing.
  - 16) The home (team's, teams', teams) score was higher than any of last (season's, seasons', seasons) games.
  - 17) The (coffee's, coffees', coffees) aroma drifted though the (room's, rooms', rooms) of their tiny house.
  - 18) All of our (family's, families', families) went camping at the state park near my (parent's, parents, parents) hometown.
  - 19) In the old west, many (town's, towns', towns) formed alongside the railroad (track's, tracks', tracks).
  - 20) A few of the (chair's, chairs, chairs) seat cushions were covered in powdered sugar after the children had a snack of milk and (doughnut's, doughnuts', doughnuts).

Plural AND Possessive Nouns 9  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Underline the correct choice.

Example: Many (magazine's, magazines, magazines) covers at the public library were covered in plastic so they would not be ripped by careless (hand's, hands, hands).

- 1) Many (inventor's, inventors', inventors) attempted to build (machine's, machines', machines) that could fly.
  - 2) Those (dress's, dresses', dresses) designers work for some of (New York's, New Yorks', New Yorks) most famous fashion houses.
  - 3) I will spend my two (day's, days', days) vacation visiting famous (beach's, beaches', beaches).
  - 4) The (Ross's, Rosses', Rosses) live next door to the (city's, cities', cities) best family park.
  - 5) Our (nation's, nations', nations) capital is located in two different (state's, states', states).
  - 6) Few (reporter's, reporters', reporters) told the whole story about that (animal's, animals', animals) capture.
  - 7) There will be two (month's, months', months) delay on the new high (school's, schools', schools) completion date.
  - 8) The (raisin's, raisins', raisins) dry quickly in (California's, Californias', Californias) sun.
  - 9) All of the (book's, books', books) covers were damaged while still in the shipping (carton's, cartons', cartons).
  - 10) Some (squirrel's, squirrels', squirrels) nested in the (Miller's, Millers', Millers) tree.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Jessica's, Jessicas', Jessicas) children waded in the (wave's, waves', waves) at the edge of Lake Michigan
  - 12) We served our (sandwich's, sandwiches', sandwiches) on my (grandmother's, grandmothers', grandmothers) china plates.
  - 13) The (sun's, suns', suns) rays heated the inside of the (car's, cars', cars).
  - 14) All (flight's, flights', flights) to California were delayed for several (hour's, hours', hours).
  - 15) A (worker's, workers', workers) wallet was found on the (dock's, docks', docks) landing.
  - 16) The home (team's, teams', teams) score was higher than any of last (season's, seasons', seasons) games.
  - 17) The (coffee's, coffees', coffees) aroma drifted though the (room's, rooms', rooms) of their tiny house.
  - 18) All of our (family's, families', families) went camping at the state park near my (parent's, parents', parents) hometown.
  - 19) In the old west, many (town's, towns', towns) formed alongside the railroad (track's, tracks', tracks).
  - 20) A few of the (chair's, chairs', chairs) seat cushions were covered in powdered sugar after the children had a snack of milk and (doughnut's, doughnuts', doughnuts).

◆ Check your work.

Plural AND Possessive Nouns 9  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Underline the correct choice.

Example: Many (magazine's, magazines, magazines) covers at the public library were covered in plastic so they would not be ripped by careless (hand's, hands', hands).

- 1) Many (inventor's, inventors', inventors) attempted to build (machine's, machines', machines) that could fly.
  - 2) Those (dress's, dresses, dresses) designers work for some of (New York's, New Yorks', New Yorks) most famous fashion houses.
  - 3) I will spend my two (day's, days, days) vacation visiting famous (beach's, beaches', beaches).
  - 4) The (Ross's, Rosses', Rosses) live next door to the (city's, cities', cities) best family park.
  - 5) Our (nation's, nations', nations) capital is located in two different (state's, states', states).
  - 6) Few (reporter's, reporters', reporters) told the whole story about that (animal's, animals', animals) capture.
  - 7) There will be two (month's, months, months) delay on the new high (school's, schools', schools) completion date.
  - 8) The (raisin's, raisins', raisins) dry quickly in (California's, Californias', Californias) sun.
  - 9) All of the (book's, books, books) covers were damaged while still in the shipping (carton's, cartons', cartons).
  - 10) Some (squirrel's, squirrels', squirrels) nested in the (Miller's, Millers, Millers) tree.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Jessica's, Jessicas', Jessicas) children waded in the (wave's, waves', waves) at the edge of Lake Michigan
  - 12) We served our (sandwich's, sandwiches', sandwiches) on my (grandmother's, grandmothers', grandmothers) china plates.
  - 13) The (sun's, suns', suns) rays heated the inside of the (car's, cars', cars).
  - 14) All (flight's, flights', flights) to California were delayed for several (hour's, hours', hours).
  - 15) A (worker's, workers', workers) wallet was found on the (dock's, docks', docks) landing.
  - 16) The home (team's, teams', teams) score was higher than any of last (season's, seasons', seasons) games.
  - 17) The (coffee's, coffees', coffees) aroma drifted though the (room's, rooms', rooms) of their tiny house.
  - 18) All of our (family's, families', families) went camping at the state park near my (parent's, parents, parents) hometown.
  - 19) In the old west, many (town's, towns', towns) formed alongside the railroad (track's, tracks', tracks).
  - 20) A few of the (chair's, chairs, chairs) seat cushions were covered in powdered sugar after the children had a snack of milk and (doughnut's, doughnuts', doughnuts).

Plural AND Possessive Nouns 10  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the noun. Determine whether the sentence needs a plural (P), a singular possessive (SP), or a plural possessive (PP).

Example:	P SP PP	Both of her <u>shoes'</u> soles had holes in them. (shoe)
	P SP PP	The <u>shoes</u> were on sale at Sears. (shoe)

- 1) P SP PP Our \_\_\_\_\_ fur coat grows thick before winter begins. (dog)
- 2) P SP PP Jenna needs to write a report about \_\_\_\_\_. (parrot)
- 3) P SP PP The yoga instructor set enough \_\_\_\_\_ down for ten students. (mat)
- 4) P SP PP All of the \_\_\_\_\_ cages were opened by the mischievous child. (animal)
- 5) P SP PP I think we should go to my \_\_\_\_\_ party tonight. (uncle)
- 6) P SP PP My younger \_\_\_\_\_ DVD collection is extensive. (brother)
- 7) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ ingredients were fattening, so Sara only had a taste. (recipe)
- 8) P SP PP The math \_\_\_\_\_ answers were often incorrect. (workbook)
- 9) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ holiday dresses were worn for the family picture. (girl)
- 10) P SP PP Many \_\_\_\_\_ shells were cracked when the grocery bag tipped over. (egg)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) P SP PP Our \_\_\_\_\_ are often full of flowers in spring. (garden)
- 12) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ dust and dirt were washed away after we sprayed them with a garden hose. (window)
- 13) P SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ were flipped and the lights illuminated the stage. (switch)
- 14) P SP PP Did all of the \_\_\_\_\_ clocks have a different time? (classroom)
- 15) P SP PP My \_\_\_\_\_ expectations were diminished when my report card arrived. (father)
- 16) P SP PP That \_\_\_\_\_ aluminum siding will be replaced with vinyl this summer. (house)
- 17) P SP PP Ella washed three \_\_\_\_\_ hoping she would get flowers for Mother's Day. (vase)
- 18) P SP PP Each \_\_\_\_\_ oceans were clearly identified with bold print. (map)
- 19) P SP PP His interest in \_\_\_\_\_ studies is surprising. (woman)
- 20) P SP PP That \_\_\_\_\_ antlers were visible from the road. (moose)

◆ Check your work.

Plural AND Possessive Nouns 10 - KEY  
(Plural Nouns and Singular/Plural Possessive Nouns)

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the noun. Determine whether the sentence needs a plural (P), a singular possessive (SP), or a plural possessive (PP).

Example: P SP PP Both of her shoes' soles had holes in them. (shoe)  
P SP PP The shoes were on sale at Sears. (shoe)

- 1) SP Our dog's fur coat grows thick before winter begins. (dog)
- 2) P Jenna needs to write a report about parrots. (parrot)
- 3) P The yoga instructor set enough mats down for ten students. (mat)
- 4) PP All of the animals' cages were opened by the mischievous child. (animal)
- 5) SP I think we should go to my uncle's party tonight. (uncle)
- 6) SP My younger brother's DVD collection is extensive. (brother)
- 7) SP The recipe's ingredients were fattening, so Sara only had a taste. (recipe)
- 8) SP The math workbook's answers were often incorrect. (workbook)
- 9) PP The girls' holiday dresses were worn for the family picture. (girl)
- 10) PP Many eggs' shells were cracked when the grocery bag tipped over. (egg)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) P Our gardens are often full of flowers in spring. (garden)
- 12) PP The windows' dust and dirt were washed away after we sprayed them with a garden hose. (window)
- 13) P The switches were flipped and the lights illuminated the stage. (switch)
- 14) PP Did all of the classrooms' clocks have a different time? (classroom)
- 15) SP My father's expectations were diminished when my report card arrived. (father)
- 16) SP That house's aluminum siding will be replaced with vinyl this summer. (house)
- 17) P Ella washed three vases hoping she would get flowers for Mother's Day. (vase)
- 18) SP Each map's oceans were clearly identified with bold print. (map)
- 19) PP His interest in women's studies is surprising. (woman)
- 20) SP That moose's antlers were visible from the road. (moose)

## POSSESSIVE PRACTICE 7

### Choose Singular or Plural Possessive

- Directions: a) To understand why a possessive is needed in each sentence, underline the noun that follows each blank.  
b) Circle singular possessive (SP) or plural possessive (PP).  
c) Fill in each blank with the correct possessive form of the noun in parentheses.

N
Example: (parent) SP <b>PP</b> My <u>parents'</u> <b>house</b> is in Ohio.

- 1) (Registrar) SP PP We should contact the \_\_\_\_\_ office to verify our enrollment.
- 2) (Instructor) SP PP Many \_\_\_\_\_ offices are located upstairs in G - building.
- 3) (Bill Gates) SP PP \_\_\_\_\_ corporation is Microsoft.
- 4) (Bud) SP PP My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ favorite game was golf.
- 5) (coffee) SP PP The \_\_\_\_\_ flavor is very strong and dark-roasted.
- 6) (child) SP PP The library in Appleton has a wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ section upstairs.
- 7) (evening) SP PP I wonder where my \_\_\_\_\_ entertainment will take me.
- 8) (team) SP PP It was my \_\_\_\_\_ two homeruns that won the game.
- 9) (son) SP PP Our \_\_\_\_\_ rooms are at the top of the front stairs.
- 10) (exercise) SP PP My doctor told me it's those \_\_\_\_\_ effects that have helped my blood pressure and weight.  
◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Thompson) SP PP I brought a menu to look over from the \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant.
- 12) (school) SP PP At the statewide track meet, we sang all the \_\_\_\_\_ fight songs.
- 13) (guitar) SP PP We love our Fender \_\_\_\_\_ thick, gutsy sounds and sleek bodies.
- 14) (buyer) SP PP When I bought my house, Anne asked about my \_\_\_\_\_ points.
- 15) (clock) SP PP I love the \_\_\_\_\_ chime in my living room.
- 16) (break) SP PP Her morning \_\_\_\_\_ duration left us all wondering where she went.
- 17) (meeting) SP PP Our \_\_\_\_\_ agenda says lunch is at 12:30 p.m.
- 18) (girl) SP PP Are your twin \_\_\_\_\_ names similar to each other like Tina and Lena?
- 19) (spider) SP PP All of the \_\_\_\_\_ webs in the barn are quite intricate and pretty.
- 20) (woman) SP PP I hope the \_\_\_\_\_ restroom sign is spelled correctly at the park.

POSSESSIVE PRACTICE 7 - KEY  
Choose Singular or Plural Possessive

- 1) (Registrar) **SP PP** We should contact the **Registrar's** office to verify our enrollment.
- 2) (instructor) **SP PP** Many **instructors'** offices are located upstairs in G - building.
- 3) (Bill Gates) **SP PP** **Bill Gates's** corporation is Microsoft.
- 4) (Bud) **SP PP** My uncle **Bud's** favorite game was golf.
- 5) (coffee) **SP PP** The **coffee's** flavor is very strong and dark-roasted.
- 6) (child) **SP PP** The library in Appleton has a wonderful **children's** section upstairs.
- 7) (evening) **SP PP** I wonder where my **evening's** entertainment will take me.
- 8) (team) **SP PP** It was my **team's** two homeruns that won the game.
- 9) (son) **SP PP** Our **sons'** rooms are at the top of the front stairs.
- 10) (exercise) **SP PP** My doctor told me it's those **exercises'** effects that have helped my blood pressure and weight.  
◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) (Thompson) **SP PP** I brought a menu to look over from the **Thompsons'** restaurant.
- 12) (school) **SP PP** At the statewide track meet, we sang all the **schools'** fight songs.
- 13) (guitar) **SP PP** We love our Fender **guitars'** thick, gutsy sounds and sleek bodies.
- 14) (buyer) **SP PP** When I bought my house, Anne asked about my **buyer's** points.
- 15) (clock) **SP PP** I love the **clock's** chime in my living room.
- 16) (break) **SP PP** Her morning **break's** duration left us all wondering where she went.
- 17) (meeting) **SP PP** Our **meeting's** agenda says lunch is at 12:30 p.m.
- 18) (girl) **SP PP** Are your twin **girls'** names similar to each other like Tina and Lena?
- 19) (spider) **SP PP** All of the **spiders'** webs in the barn are quite intricate and pretty.
- 20) (woman) **SP PP** I hope the **women's** restroom sign is spelled correctly at the park.



POSSESSIVES PRACTICE 6  
Singular & Plural Already Established

- Directions: a) Identify the word in parentheses as singular (S) or plural (P) by circling the S for singular or the P for plural.  
b) Using the correct possessive rule, fill in each blank with the possessive form of the word in parentheses.

Example: (students) S P Both the students' cars were parked in the sun. (Rule 2)

- 1) (congressman) S P The \_\_\_\_\_ speech was short and sweet.
- 2) (members) S P Let's form a \_\_\_\_\_ club based on our interests.
- 3) (horse) S P I took a seat on the \_\_\_\_\_ previously saddled back.
- 4) (brothers) S P Your \_\_\_\_\_ wives are the greatest, aren't they?
- 5) (dealer) S P That car \_\_\_\_\_ prices are pretty high lately.
- 6) (friend) S P Your best \_\_\_\_\_ glazed ceramic pottery sells for top dollar.
- 7) (teachers) S P I want to establish a \_\_\_\_\_ day at my daughter's school.
- 8) (Wisconsin) S P Do you know the name of \_\_\_\_\_ longest river?
- 9) (buddies) S P I really like my \_\_\_\_\_ attitude toward my girlfriend.
- 10) (Packers) S P The best football fans in the country are the Green Bay \_\_\_\_\_ fans.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) (soda fountain) S P Let's stop in there for one of those \_\_\_\_\_ shakes.
- 12) (Carol) S P Please get \_\_\_\_\_ clothes from the dryer downstairs.
- 13) (cousins) S P Did Sam's \_\_\_\_\_ inheritance leave them with no worries?
- 14) (owners) S P The dogs lay at their \_\_\_\_\_ sides.
- 15) (chicken) S P That \_\_\_\_\_ eggs have always been the largest in the spring.
- 16) (girlfriend) S P Your \_\_\_\_\_ brothers are a real pain in the neck, aren't they?
- 17) (Aunt Bess) S P That business has for years been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 18) (Dan) S P \_\_\_\_\_ new car is a real beauty.
- 19) (Intro to Grammar) S P \_\_\_\_\_ greatest challenge is possessives.
- 20) (Cincinnati) S P The Ohio River is \_\_\_\_\_ major shipping lane for freight.

◆ Check your work.

POSSESSIVES PRACTICE 6  
Singular & Plural Already Established

- 1) (congressman) S The congressman's speech was short and sweet.
- 2) (members) P Let's form a members' club based on our interests.
- 3) (horse) S I took a seat on the horse's previously saddled back.
- 4) (brothers) P Your brothers' wives are the greatest, aren't they?
- 5) (dealer) S That car dealer's prices are pretty high lately.
- 6) (friend) S Your best friend's glazed ceramic pottery sells for top dollar.
- 7) (teachers) P I want to establish a teachers' day at my daughter's school.
- 8) (Wisconsin) S Do you know the name of Wisconsin's longest river?
- 9) (buddies) P I really like my buddies' attitude toward my girlfriend.
- 10) (Packers) P The best football fans in the country are the Green Bay Packers' (fans).

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) (soda fountain) S Let's stop in there for one of their soda fountain's shakes.
- 12) (Carol) S Please get Carol's clothes from the dryer downstairs.
- 13) (cousins) P Did Sam's cousins' inheritance leave them with no worries?
- 14) (owners) P The dogs lay at their owners' sides.
- 15) (chicken) S That chicken's eggs have always been the largest in the spring.
- 16) (girlfriend) S Your girlfriend's brothers are a real pain in the neck, aren't they?
- 17) (Aunt Bess) S That business has for years been Aunt Bess's .
- 18) (Dan) S Dan's new car is a real beauty.
- 19) (Intro to Grammar) S Intro to Grammar's greatest challenge is possessives.
- 20) (Cincinnati) S The Ohio River is Cincinnati's major shipping lane for freight.

### Possessive Nouns Practice 11

- Directions: 1) Underline the possessive in each sentence.  
2) Label the noun that follows the possessive with N.  
3) On the blank following each sentence, write SP (singular possessive) or PP (plural possessive) for the possessive nouns indicated.

N

Example: Both my sisters' husbands are members of the Army Reserves. PP

- 1) Aaron had to make sure that the store's front door was locked. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) The tires' treads will be worn down soon. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) The firemen's jackets hung on the hooks in Station # 2. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) The baby spilled crackers on the sofa's cushion. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5) The ladies' department is having a sale this Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6) There was a citizens' meeting to discuss the election. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7) They wanted their friend's sporty new car. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8) Lee's Visa bill came in the mail today. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9) The nation's capital is located in Washington, D.C. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10) The salmon's tails are moving very fast. \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The company's president was recognized for her creativity. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 12) James's father went to visit him in Spain. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 13) Those trees' leaves have turned a beautiful gold and bronze. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 14) Many of Ben's friends work at Lowes. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 15) The book's cover had been ripped off. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 16) The Joneses' house just went on the market. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 17) The tomatoes' skins are turning red. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 18) The mice's nests are near the basement. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 19) Jan placed her baby's blanket in the laundry basket. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 20) Tess's brother is getting married in March. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

Possessive Nouns Practice 11 - KEY

- Directions: a) Underline the possessive in each sentence.  
b) Label the noun that follows the possessive with N.  
c) On the blank following each sentence, write SP (singular possessive) or PP (plural possessive) for the possessive nouns indicated.

N	
Example: Both my <u>sisters'</u> husbands are members of the Army Reserves.	PP

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| N  |    |
| 1) Aaron had to make sure that the <u>store's</u> front door was locked. | SP |
| N  |    |
| 2) The rear <u>tires'</u> treads will be worn down soon.                 | PP |
| N  |    |
| 3) The <u>firemen's</u> jackets hung on the hooks in Station # 2.        | PP |
| N  |    |
| 4) The baby spilled crackers on the <u>sofa's</u> cushion.               | SP |
| N  |    |
| 5) The <u>ladies'</u> department is having a sale this Saturday.         | PP |
| N  |    |
| 6) There was a <u>citizens'</u> meeting to discuss the election.         | PP |
| N  |    |
| 7) They wanted their <u>friend's</u> sporty new car.                     | SP |
| N  |    |
| 8) <u>Lee's</u> VISA bill came in the mail today.                        | SP |
| N  |    |
| 9) The <u>nation's</u> capital is located in Washington, D.C.            | SP |
| N  |    |
| 10) The <u>salmon's</u> tails are moving very fast.                      | PP |
| ◆ Stop here and check your work.   |    |
| N  |    |
| 11) The <u>company's</u> president was recognized for her creativity.    | SP |
| N  |    |
| 12) <u>James's</u> father went to visit him in Spain.                    | SP |
| N  |    |
| 13) Those <u>trees'</u> leaves have turned a beautiful gold and bronze.  | PP |
| N  |    |
| 14) Many of <u>Ben's</u> friends work at Lowes.                          | SP |
| N  |    |
| 15) The <u>book's</u> cover had been ripped off.                         | SP |
| N  |    |
| 16) The <u>Joneses'</u> house just went on the market.                   | PP |
| N  |    |
| 17) The <u>tomatoes'</u> skins are turning red.                          | PP |
| N  |    |
| 18) The <u>mice's</u> nests are near the basement.                       | PP |
| N  |    |
| 19) Jan placed her <u>baby's</u> blanket in the laundry basket.          | SP |
| N  |    |
| 20) <u>Tess's</u> brother is getting married in March.                   | SP |

## Prepositional Phrases 1

Directions: A. Circle the prepositions.  
B. Underline the phrase including the preposition.

Example: High weeds grow by the narrow path. (1) *This number indicates the number of prepositions/prepositional phrases in the sentence.*

- 1) The boy down the street is happy with his new bike. (2)
  - 2) Summertime on the farm is so much fun. (1)
  - 3) My aunt Elena lives in Milwaukee. (1)
  - 4) Beautiful flowers grow along the roadside in summer. (2)
  - 5) The child near the swing set is my son. (1)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) We sat around the campfire and told ghost stories.
  - 7) Our bus stalled on the bridge.
  - 8) Huge bunches of bananas hung on the tree.
  - 9) The snow blew against the windowpane.
  - 10) Go over the river and through the tunnel to get to the mail.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) It is difficult to find the flower among the thorns.
  - 12) Would you please turn at the corner between the buildings.
  - 13) During the play a bird flew through the window.
  - 14) This short story was written by Edgar Allen Poe.
  - 15) The gift from Grandma arrived on Monday.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Prepositional Phrases 1 - KEY

- Directions: A. Circle the prepositions.  
B. Underline the phrase including the preposition.

Example: High weeds grow by the narrow path. (1) *This number indicates the number of prepositions/prepositional phrases in the sentence.*

- 1) The boy down the street is happy with his new bike. (2)
- 2) Summertime on the farm is so much fun. (1)
- 3) My aunt Elena lives in Milwaukee. (1)
- 4) Beautiful flowers grow along the roadside in summer. (2)
- 5) The child near the swing set is my son. (1)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) We sat around the campfire and told ghost stories.
- 7) Our bus stalled on the bridge.
- 8) Huge bunches of bananas hung on the tree.
- 9) The snow blew against the windowpane.
- 10) Go over the river and through the tunnel to get to the mail.  
[ TO get is a *verb infinitive*; only TO + a person or a place is a preposition.]

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) It is difficult to find the flower among the thorns.
- 12) Would you please turn at the corner between the buildings.
- 13) During the play a bird flew through the window.
- 14) This short story was written by Edgar Allen Poe.
- 15) The gift from Grandma arrived on Monday.

## Prepositional Phrases 2

Directions: Draw a circle around any prepositions and underline the prepositional phrase that follows it.

Example: Cars with manual transmissions should be parked on the level street.

- 1) On Saturday during the Badgers' game, we'll ask my brother for that personal favor.
- 2) In a minute our purpose will become clear to everyone in the room.
- 3) I can't tell if you have the funds that such a request requires for repayment.
- 4) In the mornings next week, will you bring the donuts for all daily meetings?
- 5) Are you staying in one of the better rooms of that hotel near the river's edge?
- 6) A box of tools with chrome handles is in my car at the Central City ramp.
- 7) The Mesabi Range in northern Minnesota has the nation's largest deposit of iron ore.
- 8) Older people with arthritis often experience stiffness with aches and pains in the morning.
- 9) She can bring such joy to the room with her style of interaction with others.
- 10) The end of the bull market was signaled by the sell-off of many airlines' stocks.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) She can attract a certain amount of research funding with her excellent reputation.
- 12) How is it that you know how to identify prepositions without the phrases that follow?
- 13) Bring your new Rat Box to our practice next week, so I can try it out with my guitar.
- 14) Do you have to go to school tomorrow to finish your incomplete grammar practice?
- 15) The man with the most damaging testimony will be on the witness stand in the afternoon.
- 16) While having a lot on his mind, he was not able to think so quickly on his feet.
- 17) A large package with Christmas presents arrived in the mail without any return address.
- 18) When we moved in, a herd of sheep occupied the field on the opposite side of our street.
- 19) I want to put the star on the top of the tree this year at Christmas time.
- 20) Today, I have to be at Piggly Wiggly by noon for the sale on chicken breasts.

◆ Check your work.

## Prepositional Phrases 2

Directions: Draw a circle around any prepositions and underline the prepositional phrase that follows it.

Example: Cars with manual transmissions should be parked on the level street.

- 1) On Saturday during the Badgers' game, we'll ask my brother for that personal favor.
- 2) In a minute our purpose will become clear to everyone in the room.
- 3) I can't tell if you have the funds that such a request requires for repayment.
- 4) In the mornings next week, will you bring the donuts for all daily meetings?
- 5) Are you staying in one of the better rooms of that hotel near the river's edge?
- 6) A box of tools with chrome handles is in my car at the Central City ramp.
- 7) The Mesabi Range in northern Minnesota has the nation's largest deposit of iron ore.
- 8) Older people with arthritis often experience stiffness with aches and pains in the morning.
- 9) She can bring such joy to the room with her style of interaction with others.
- 10) The end of the bull market was signaled by the sell-off of many airlines' stocks.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) She can attract a certain amount of research funding with her excellent reputation.
- 12) How is it that you know how to identify prepositions without the phrases that follow?
- 13) Bring your new Rat Box to our practice next week, so I can try it out with my guitar.
- 14) Do you have to go to school tomorrow to finish your incomplete grammar practice?
- 15) The man with the most damaging testimony will be on the witness stand in the afternoon.
- 16) While having a lot on his mind, he was not able to think so quickly on his feet.
- 17) A large package with Christmas presents arrived in the mail without any return address.
- 18) When we moved in, a herd of sheep occupied the field on the opposite side of our street.
- 19) I want to put the star on the top of the tree this year at Christmas time.
- 20) Today, I have to be at Piggly Wiggly by noon for the sale on chicken breasts.



### Prepositional Phrases 3

Directions: Draw a circle around any prepositions and underline the prepositional phrase.

Example: Cars with manual transmissions should be parked on the level street.

- 1) I had to program my cell phone with my favorite numbers.
- 2) During a break, I went into the bookstore to purchase a textbook.
- 3) The woman with the tools is my aunt from Toledo.
- 4) Can we go to my favorite restaurant?
- 5) At the hardware store I must buy hinges for my door.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) Finding the noun with a prepositional phrase after it is easier now.
- 7) I have placed the wood carving from you on my front lawn.
- 8) Wild daisies have grown all by themselves along my garden fence.
- 9) The Friday after the holiday break is my birthday.
- 10) The man without a beard wants to cheer me up.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The most honored person among the graduates is a former GOAL student.
- 12) Under the bed I found several of my cat's fur balls.
- 13) The difficulties between shift workers at the paper mill are escalating.
- 14) Near the start of next semester, will you have a car to drive for school?
- 15) I saw wild turkeys when I had to drive to my mom's house.
- ◆ Check your work.

### Prepositional Phrases 3 - KEY

Directions: Draw a circle around any prepositions and underline the prepositional phrase.

Example: Cars with manual transmissions should be parked on the level street.

1) I had to program my cell phone with my favorite numbers. (... to program ... is a verb infinitive)

2) During a break, I went into the bookstore to purchase a textbook. (... to purchase ... is a verb infinitive)

3) The woman with the tools is my aunt from Toledo.

4) Can we go to my favorite restaurant?

5) At the hardware store I must buy hinges for my door.

◆ Stop here and check your work

6) Finding the noun with a prepositional phrase after it is easier now.

7) I have placed the wood carving from you on my front lawn.

8) Wild daisies have grown all by themselves along my garden fence.

9) The Friday after the holiday break is my birthday.

10) The man without a beard wants to cheer me up. (to cheer= a verb infinitive ~ to cheer me up = an idiom)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) The most honored person among the graduates is a former GOAL student.

12) Under the bed I found several of my cat's fur balls.

13) The difficulties between shift workers at the paper mill are escalating.

14) Near the start of next semester, will you have a car to drive for school?

15) I saw wild turkeys when I had to drive to my mom's house. (... to drive ... is a verb infinitive)

## Prepositional Phrases 4

Directions: A. Circle the prepositions.  
B. Underline the phrase including the preposition.

Example: Snakes often sun themselves by the narrow path.

1) The driver of the red race car has won the competition three years in a row! (2)

2) The textbook at the top of the list was available for purchase. (3)

3) My neighbor Ellen bought a cute puppy from the pet store. (1)

4) The family in the next block is leaving on vacation. (2)

5) He enjoys listening to jazz music during warm summer evenings. (2)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

6) We sat around the campfire and told ghost stories.

7) Our bus stalled on the bridge.

8) Huge bunches of bananas hung on the tree.

9) The snow blew against the windowpane.

10) Go over the river and through the tunnel to get to the mail.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) It is difficult to find the flower among the thorns.

12) Would you please turn at the corner between the buildings.

13) During the play a bird flew through the window.

14) This short story was written by Edgar Allen Poe.

15) The gift from Grandma arrived on Monday.

◆ Check your work.

Prepositional Phrases 4 - KEY

Directions: A. Circle the prepositions.  
B. Underline the phrase including the preposition.

Example: High weeds grow by the narrow path. (1) *This number indicates the number of prepositions/prepositional phrases in the sentence.*

1) The driver of the red race car has won the competition three years in a row! (2)

2) The textbook at the top of the list was available for purchase. (3)

3) My neighbor Ellen bought a cute puppy from the pet store. (1)

4) The family in the next block is leaving on vacation. (2)

5) He enjoys listening to jazz music during warm summer evenings. (2)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

6) We sat around the campfire and told ghost stories.

7) Our bus stalled on the bridge.

8) Huge bunches of bananas hung on the tree.

9) The snow blew against the windowpane.

10) Go over the river and through the tunnel to get to the mail.  
[ TO get is a *verb infinitive*; only TO + a person or a place is a preposition.]

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) It is difficult to find the flower among the thorns.

12) Would you please turn at the corner between the buildings.

13) During the play a bird flew through the window.

14) This short story was written by Edgar Allen Poe.

15) The gift from Grandma arrived on Monday.

## PREPOSITIONS INFORMATION SHEET

**DEFINITION: Prepositions** show the relationship between words in a sentence. They usually refer to place or position (think: prePOSITION).

The dog hid **under** the bed. (*Under* tells where the dog is in relationship to the bed.)

The dog ran **around** the bed. (Here, the dog isn't *under*, he's running *around* the bed.)

Study the following list of common prepositions. Memorize the ones in ***bold*** print.

about	behind	except	opposite	<b>to</b>
above	below	<b>for</b>	out	toward
across	beneath	<b>from</b>	outside	under
<b>after</b>	beside	<b>in</b>	over	underneath
against	besides	inside	past	unlike
along	<b>between</b>	into	per	until
alongside	beyond	like	plus	unto
amid	but (except)	<b>near</b>	regarding	up
<b>among</b>	<b>by</b>	next (to)	since	upon
around	concerning	<b>of</b>	through	<b>with</b>
as	despite	off	throughout	within
<b>at</b>	down	<b>on</b>	till	without
before	during	onto		

(Need help remembering? The first letters of the common ones spell out the phrases, ***off a bat / in a bow.***)

If you don't remember the common prepositions, refer to the chart above now and memorize the ones in bold print.

**EXERCISE 1** Write 13 of the most common prepositions from memory: (*Cover the chart above.*)

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1. <u>  </u> <b>O</b> <u>                  </u> | 5. <u>  </u> <b>B</b> <u>                  </u> | 10. <u>  </u> <b>A</b> <u>                  </u> |
| 2. <u>  </u> <b>F</b> <u>                  </u> | 6. <u>  </u> <b>A</b> <u>                  </u> |  |
| 3. <u>  </u> <b>F</b> <u>                  </u> | 7. <u>  </u> <b>T</b> <u>                  </u> | 11. <u>  </u> <b>B</b> <u>                  </u> |
|   |   | 12. <u>  </u> <b>O</b> <u>                  </u> |
| 4. <u>  </u> <b>A</b> <u>                  </u> | 8. <u>  </u> <b>I</b> <u>                  </u> | 13. <u>  </u> <b>W</b> <u>                  </u> |
|   | 9. <u>  </u> <b>N</b> <u>                  </u> |  |

*Check your answers with the answer key on page 3.*

### PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

A **prepositional phrase** begins with a preposition, may include adjectives, and ends with a noun or pronoun (called its *object*). Prepositions come only in phrases, never alone.

The table in the hall should be moved from our old home.

Send it to us when it arrives by special courier.

One of my friends went to Florida to look\* for a better job, but she hadn't been there before.\*

Adjectives (such as *old*, *special*, and *better*) may also be part of prepositional phrases.

However, some words that look like prepositions may have other functions. For example, when used alone or combined with other parts of speech, they are not prepositions. \* Therefore, notice exceptions such as *to* in *to look* (a verb infinitive) and *before* (used alone as an adverb).

### PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES IN SENTENCES

The simple subject of a sentence is never in a prepositional phrase. To find the simple subject, start by crossing out all prepositional phrases in the sentence.

Because the only job of a preposition is to describe, words in prepositional phrases do not affect verbs or subject-pronoun agreement in sentences. Therefore, ignore prepositional phrases when matching subjects with verbs or pronouns.

S  
**One** of the new students **has lost** his or her keys.

This **pair** of pants **needs** to be pressed.

**Problems** with schedules **were discussed** earlier.

V  
 Several **people** in my class **are** professionals.

Freshly baked **brownies** in the pan **are** hard

to hide because **they** **smell** so good.

**EXERCISE 2:** Circle the prepositions. Then cross out all prepositional phrases (including the preposition. Can you find the subjects (S) and verbs (V)?

S  
 EXAMPLE: Yesterday ~~at the store~~ a **carton** of fresh eggs ~~for your breakfast~~ suddenly **fell** ~~on the floor~~.  
 V

1. After dinner one of us will call you at work.
2. The tickets for tomorrow's game will go on sale at noon.
3. Among all entries, only the project by him and her won a prize.
4. Paintings at the gallery were sold to the highest bidder for large sums of money.
5. Between you and me, everyone in the office was planning a surprise party for him.
6. For the record, few farmers in that part of the state planted crops during the wet spring last year.
7. At the beginning of summer, some of the books from these cabinets were sent to the storeroom for inventory.

More information about using Prepositions:

**PRONOUNS AFTER PREPOSITIONS:** Use only these **object** pronouns after prepositions:

**me      you      him      her      it      us      them**

They went swimming **with** *me* . .

This discussion is **between** *him* and *them*.

Every one **of** *them* left **except** *us* sales reps.

Send the orders **to** both *her* and *me* **by**

*Wednesday*.

**EXERCISE 3:** a) Underline all prepositions (check the above list). b) Circle the correct pronoun(s).

1. Carol lives near ( he, him ).
2. Many people were in line behind ( we, us ).
3. Why don't you come to the movies with Leslie and ( he, him )?
4. The work was done by ( she, her) and ( I, me ).
5. Just between you and ( I, me ), I'd rather be on vacation.
6. Ms. Davis plans a meeting with ( they, them ) and ( we, us ).

Check your answers with the key on page 4 before you move on to Exercise 4.

**EXERCISE 4:** a) Underline all prepositions.  
b) Circle the correct pronoun(s).

1. Do these keys belong to ( him, he ) or ( her, she )?
2. Neither one of ( we, us ) will be at the meeting.
3. Both of ( they, them ) received scholarships from the company.
4. He said, "Between you and ( I, me ), ( her, she ) will get the promotion."
5. These contracts will be signed by ( he, him ) and ( me, I ).

Check your work with the answer key on page 4.

## Answer Key to Prepositions Exercises

**EXERCISE 1:** Write 13 of the most common prepositions from memory.

Of            After            By            In            At            Between  
 For                            Among            Near            On  
 From                            To                            With

**EXERCISE 2:** Remember: Subjects and verbs are NEVER found in prepositional phrases!

EXAMPLE: Yesterday ~~at the store~~ <sup>S</sup> a *carton* ~~of fresh eggs for your breakfast~~ <sup>V</sup> suddenly *fell* ~~on the floor~~.

1. ~~After dinner~~ <sup>S</sup> *one of us* ~~will call you at work~~ <sup>V</sup>.
2. The tickets ~~for tomorrow's game~~ <sup>S</sup> *will go on sale* ~~at noon~~ <sup>V</sup>.
3. ~~Among all entries~~ <sup>S</sup>, only the *project* ~~by him and her~~ <sup>V</sup> won a prize.
4. *Paintings* ~~at the gallery~~ <sup>S</sup> *were sold* ~~to the highest bidder~~ <sup>V</sup> ~~for large sums of money~~.
5. ~~Between you and me~~ <sup>S</sup>, *everyone* ~~in the office~~ <sup>V</sup> *was planning* a surprise party ~~for him~~.
6. ~~For the record~~ <sup>S</sup>, few *farmers* ~~in that part of the state~~ <sup>V</sup> *planted* crops ~~during the wet spring~~ last year.
7. ~~At the beginning of summer~~ <sup>S</sup>, *some of the books* ~~from these cabinets~~ <sup>V</sup> *were sent* ~~to the storeroom for inventory~~.

**EXERCISE 3:** a) Underline all prepositions (check the above list). b) Circle the correct pronoun(s).

1. Carol lives near ( he, **him** ).
2. Many people were in line behind (we, **us** ).
3. Why don't you come to the movies with Leslie and ( he, **him** )?
4. The work was done by ( she, **her** ) and ( I, **me** ).
5. Just between you and ( I, **me** ), I'd rather be on vacation.
6. Ms. Davis plans a meeting with ( they, **them** ) and ( we, **us** ).

**EXERCISE 4:** a) Underline all prepositions.  
 b) Circle the correct pronoun(s).

1. Do these keys belong to ( **him**, he ) or ( **her**, she )?
2. Neither one of ( we, **us** ) will be at the meeting.
3. Both of ( they, **them** ) received scholarships from the company.
4. He said, "Between you and ( I, **me** ), ( her, **she** ) will get the promotion."



5. These contracts will be signed by ( he, **him** ) and ( **me**, I ).

Pronoun – Antecedent Agreement 5  
Mixed Practice

Directions: a) Underline the word(s) the pronoun refers to ( Hint: It won't be after the word of ).  
b) Circle the correct pronoun.

Example: Each girl could do (her, their ) her own job. HER

- 1) Each could do ( his/ her, their ) own work individually.
- 2) Neither of my sisters could believe ( their, her ) own ears.
- 3) Arturo and James enjoy ( his, their ) hobbies.
- 4) Either she or her friends should notify ( his/her, their ) supervisors.
- 5) One of my colleagues obtained (his/her, their ) own private copy.
- 6) Tell everyone to pay for ( his/her, their ) own book.
- 7) Not only her instructor but also her boss sent in ( their, his/her ) recommendation.
- 8) The dogs have lost ( his, its, their ) collars.
- 9) Many of the men wore ( their, his )hair long.
- 10) Neither my neighbors nor he reported losing ( his, their ) belongings in the robbery.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Marta and her parents were enjoying ( her, their ) picnic.
- 12) Another of the stores announced ( its, their ) holiday hours.
- 13) One of the students told ( their, his/her ) story about the Alamo.
- 14) Do you want all of the dishes put in ( its, their ) boxes?
- 15) Either he or she should check ( his / her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 16) Either of the speakers may be able to finish ( their, his/her ) speech in an hour.
- 17) Every worker must do ( his/her, their ) part on this project.
- 18) All of the members should pay ( his/her, their ) dues on time.
- 19) Not only she but also he checked ( his / her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 20) Neither of the answers is in ( its, their ) correct blank.

◆ Check your work.

Pronoun – Antecedent Agreement - KEY  
Mixed Practice

Directions: a) Underline the word(s) the pronoun refers to ( Hint: It won't be after the word of ).  
b) Circle the correct pronoun.

Example: Each girl could do (her, their ) her own job. HER

- 1) Each could do ( HIS/HER, their ) own work individually.
- 2) Neither of my sisters could believe ( their, HER ) own ears.
- 3) Arturo and James enjoy ( his, THEIR ) hobbies.
- 4) Either she or her friends should notify ( his/her, THEIR ) supervisors.
- 5) One of my colleagues obtained (HIS/HER, their ) own private copy.
- 6) Tell everyone to pay for ( HIS/HER, their ) own book.
- 7) Not only her instructor but also her boss sent in ( their, HIS/HER ) recommendation.
- 8) The dogs have lost ( his, its, THEIR ) collars.
- 9) Many of the men wore ( THEIR, his ) hair long.
- 10) Neither my neighbors nor he reported losing ( HIS, their ) belongings in the robbery.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Marta and her parents were enjoying ( her, THEIR ) picnic.
- 12) Another of the stores announced ( ITS, their ) holiday hours.
- 13) One of the students told ( their, HIS/HER ) story about the Alamo.
- 14) Do you want all [of the dishes] put in ( its, THEIR ) boxes?
- 15) Either he or she should check ( his, HER, their ) report before submitting it.
- 16) Either of the speakers may be able to finish ( their, HIS/HER ) speech in an hour.
- 17) Every worker must do ( HIS/HER, their ) part on this project.
- 18) All [of the members] should pay ( his/her, THEIR ) dues on time.
- 19) Not only she but also he checked ( HIS, her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 20) Neither of the answers is in ( ITS, their ) correct blank.

Pronoun – Antecedent Agreement 5  
Mixed Practice

Directions: a) Underline the word(s) the pronoun refers to ( Hint: It won't be after the word of ).  
b) Circle the correct pronoun.

Example: Each girl could do (her, their ) her own job. HER

- 1) Each could do ( his/ her, their ) own work individually.
- 2) Neither of my sisters could believe ( their, her ) own ears.
- 3) Arturo and James enjoy ( his, their ) hobbies.
- 4) Either she or her friends should notify ( his/her, their ) supervisors.
- 5) One of my colleagues obtained (his/her, their ) own private copy.
- 6) Tell everyone to pay for ( his/her, their ) own book.
- 7) Not only her instructor but also her boss sent in ( their, his/her ) recommendation.
- 8) The dogs have lost ( his, its, their ) collars.
- 9) Many of the men wore ( their, his )hair long.
- 10) Neither my neighbors nor he reported losing ( his, their ) belongings in the robbery.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Marta and her parents were enjoying ( her, their ) picnic.
- 12) Another of the stores announced ( its, their ) holiday hours.
- 13) One of the students told ( their, his/her ) story about the Alamo.
- 14) Do you want all of the dishes put in ( its, their ) boxes?
- 15) Either he or she should check ( his / her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 16) Either of the speakers may be able to finish ( their, his/her ) speech in an hour.
- 17) Every worker must do ( his/her, their ) part on this project.
- 18) All of the members should pay ( his/her, their ) dues on time.
- 19) Not only she but also he checked ( his / her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 20) Neither of the answers is in ( its, their ) correct blank.

◆ Check your work.

Pronoun – Antecedent Agreement - KEY  
Mixed Practice

Directions: a) Underline the word(s) the pronoun refers to ( Hint: It won't be after the word of ).  
b) Circle the correct pronoun.

Example: Each girl could do (her, their ) her own job. HER

- 1) Each could do ( HIS/HER, their ) own work individually.
- 2) Neither of my sisters could believe ( their, HER ) own ears.
- 3) Arturo and James enjoy ( his, THEIR ) hobbies.
- 4) Either she or her friends should notify ( his/her, THEIR ) supervisors.
- 5) One of my colleagues obtained (HIS/HER, their ) own private copy.
- 6) Tell everyone to pay for ( HIS/HER, their ) own book.
- 7) Not only her instructor but also her boss sent in ( their, HIS/HER ) recommendation.
- 8) The dogs have lost ( his, its, THEIR ) collars.
- 9) Many of the men wore ( THEIR, his ) hair long.
- 10) Neither my neighbors nor he reported losing ( HIS, their ) belongings in the robbery.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Marta and her parents were enjoying ( her, THEIR ) picnic.
- 12) Another of the stores announced ( ITS, their ) holiday hours.
- 13) One of the students told ( their, HIS/HER ) story about the Alamo.
- 14) Do you want all [of the dishes] put in ( its, THEIR ) boxes?
- 15) Either he or she should check ( his, HER, their ) report before submitting it.
- 16) Either of the speakers may be able to finish ( their, HIS/HER ) speech in an hour.
- 17) Every worker must do ( HIS/HER, their ) part on this project.
- 18) All [of the members] should pay ( his/her, THEIR ) dues on time.
- 19) Not only she but also he checked ( HIS, her, their ) report before submitting it.
- 20) Neither of the answers is in ( ITS, their ) correct blank.

Pronoun – Antecedent 1  
(Personal Pronouns)

Directions:   **a.** Correct the pronouns in the incorrect sentence.  
                  **b.** Write **Correct** if there is no error.

Example:    Give it to Sam or <del>I</del> <b>me</b>
--

- 1) Neither the pamphlet nor the letters were in its proper place.
- 2) Every student wants their paper to receive an A grade.
- 3) Not one of these women seems to know what they should do.
- 4) We teachers correct all of the papers ourselves.
- 5) Each of the students devoted his/her energy toward one goal.
- 6) Emmitt knew his answer, but he was afraid to say them aloud.
- 7) Angela and I went to visit my friend Ian.
- 8) Don, along with his brothers, is fishing on their favorite lake.
- 9) All of these children are in their seats.
- 10) Not only the cat but also her kittens have left their hiding place.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) The class has their final tomorrow.
- 12) Everybody wanted to register for their class at the same time.
- 13) The final choice made Heather and I think twice about our decision.
- 14) Everyone will clear her own desk each night.
- 15) Chris, along with his parents, went to their family reunion,
- 16) Some of the cake is in their pan.
- 17) Measles causes a high fever as one of their symptoms.
- 18) Neither the coach nor the players knew their new schedule.
- 19) Not only Mia but also Tao has their orientation tonight.
- 20) Everyone knows what their duty is.

◆ Check your work.

## Pronoun – Antecedent 1 - Key

- Directions:   **a.** Correct the pronouns in the incorrect sentence.  
                  **b.** Write **Correct** if there is no error.

Example:     Give it to Sam or <del>I</del> <b>me</b>
---

- 1) Neither the pamphlet nor the letters were in ~~its~~ proper place. **their**
  - 2) Every student wants ~~their~~ paper to receive an A grade. **his/her**
  - 3) Not one of these women seems to know what ~~they~~ should do. **she**
  - 4) We teachers correct all of the papers ourselves. **Correct**
  - 5) Each of them devoted her energy toward one goal. **Correct**
  - 6) Emmitt knew his answer, but he was afraid to say ~~them~~ aloud. **it**
  - 7) Angela and I went to visit ~~my~~ friend Ian. **our**
  - 8) Don, along with his brothers, is fishing on ~~their~~ favorite lake. **his**
  - 9) All of these children are in their seats. **Correct**
  - 10) Not only the cat but also her kittens have left their hiding place. **Correct**
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The class has ~~their~~ final tomorrow. **its**
  - 12) Everybody wanted to register for ~~their~~ class at the same time. **his/her**
  - 13) The final choice made Heather and I think twice about our decision. **Correct**
  - 14) Everyone will clear her own desk each night. **Correct**
  - 15) Chris, along with his parents, went to ~~their~~ family reunion. **his**
  - 16) Some of the cake is in ~~their~~ pan. **its**
  - 17) Measles causes a high fever as one of ~~their~~ symptoms.. **its**
  - 18) Neither the coach nor the players knew their new schedule. **Correct**
  - 19) Not only Mia but also Tao has ~~their~~ orientation tonight. **his**
  - 20) Everyone knows what ~~their~~ duty is. **his/her**

## PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT 2 - Mixed

Directions: Fill in the sentences using the correct pronoun from this list: he, his, him, her, their, its. Underline the word to which the pronoun refers.

Example: Mike, together with his wife, bought his new car.

- 1) Everybody in GOAL English is getting \_\_\_\_\_ homework completed.
  - 2) Each of the girls lost \_\_\_\_\_ dolls.
  - 3) Not only Karen but also her sons received \_\_\_\_\_ awards.
  - 4) The winning team of all the games has \_\_\_\_\_ celebration tonight.
  - 5) Joe, as well as the women, ate \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.
  - 6) Everything in the pantry must be in \_\_\_\_\_ correct order.
  - 7) Neither the daughter nor the son knew where \_\_\_\_\_ parents went.
  - 8) Three-fourths of the class members pass \_\_\_\_\_ tests.
  - 9) The papers in the book were not in \_\_\_\_\_ proper place.
  - 10) Neither of the dogs from the pound went for \_\_\_\_\_ walk.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The school band had \_\_\_\_\_ performance played on the radio.
  - 12) The teacher and the student went to \_\_\_\_\_ classroom.
  - 13) Someone wrote \_\_\_\_\_ name on the sidewalk.
  - 14) Either Erin or James from Accounting left \_\_\_\_\_ ledger here.
  - 15) Jeanne, along with Steve, visited \_\_\_\_\_ parents.
  - 16) Neither Ian nor Andy knew where \_\_\_\_\_ was going.
  - 17) The committee of seven people made \_\_\_\_\_ opinion known.
  - 18) Neither the papers nor the book on the table has \_\_\_\_\_ pages numbered.
  - 19) Dale, as well as Colin, lost the keys to \_\_\_\_\_ motorcycle.
  - 20) The hurricanes have destroyed the towns and \_\_\_\_\_ surrounding areas.

◆ Check your work.



PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT - KEY

Directions: Fill in the sentences using the correct pronoun from this list: he, his, him, her, their, its. Underline the word to which the pronoun refers.

Example: Mike, together with his wife, bought his new car.

- 1) Everybody in GOAL English is getting his/her homework completed.
  - 2) Each of the girls lost her dolls.
  - 3) Not only Karen but also her sons received their awards.
  - 4) The winning team of soccer players has its celebration tonight.
  - 5) Joe, as well as the women, ate his lunch.
  - 6) Everything in the pantry must be in its correct order.
  - 7) Neither the daughter nor the son knew where his parents went.
  - 8) Three-fourths [of the class members] pass their tests. [3/4s is made plural by prep phrase]
  - 9) The papers in the book were not in their proper place.
  - 10) Neither of the dogs from the pound went for its walk.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The school band had its performance played on the radio.
  - 12) The teacher and the student went to their classroom.
  - 13) Someone wrote his/her name on the sidewalk.
  - 14) Either Erin or James from Accounting left his ledger here.
  - 15) Jeanne, along with Steve, visited her parents.
  - 16) Neither Ian nor Andy knew where he was going.
  - 17) The committee of seven people made its [opinion] known. [opinion is sing. = committee as 1 body made 1 opinion known]
  - 18) Neither the papers nor the book on the table has its pages numbered.
  - 19) Dale, as well as Colin, lost the keys to his motorcycle.
  - 20) The hurricanes have destroyed the towns and their surrounding areas.

## Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement 3

### Indefinite Pronouns

Directions: Underline the subject of the sentence. Decide whether the subject is singular (S) or plural (P). Then choose the correct pronoun(s) in the parentheses.

Example:	<u>Everybody</u>	Sing. subject	=	sing. pronoun	( <u>his/her</u> , their)
----------	------------------	---------------	---	---------------	---------------------------

needs to bring jacket on the field trip.

- 1) Each of the shipping clerks smiled with pleasure when (he/she, they) heard the good news.
  - 2) Several students shared (her, their) report in front of the entire class.
  - 3) Someone has left (his/her, their) notebooks in the campus library.
  - 4) Either of the apartments that Ms. Yang owns will be acceptable to Gee if (it, they) can be rented before December 15.
  - 5) Every one of the staff should do (his/her, their) part in making new employees feel welcome.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 6) Each of the leftovers (is, are) in the refrigerator, and you can heat (it, them) in the microwave for supper.
  - 7) Many of the customers seemed interested in the candles that were on sale but decided that (he/she, they) would not purchase any today.
  - 8) Anybody taking a GOAL English grammar course can feel proud of (himself/herself, themselves), because it is an important tool for speaking and writing correctly.
  - 9) Somebody left (his/her, their) winter coat on top of the red truck in the parking lot.
  - 10) Everyone who has the answer to the math problem is invited to raise (his/her, their) hand and share it with the class.

◆ Check your work.

## Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement 3 - KEY

### Indefinite Pronouns

Directions: Underline the subject of the sentence. Decide whether the subject is singular (S) or plural (P). Then choose the correct pronoun(s) in the parentheses.

Example:	Sing. subject	=	sing. pronoun
	<u>Everybody</u>		needs to bring ( <u>his/her</u> , their) jacket on the field trip.

- S
- 1) Each of the shipping clerks smiled with pleasure when (he/she, they) heard the good news.  
P
- 2) Several students shared (her, their) report in front of the entire class.  
S
- 3) Someone has left (his/her, their) notebooks in the campus library.  
S
- 4) Either of the apartments that Ms. Yang owns will be acceptable to Gee if (it, they) can be rented before December 15.  
S
- 5) Every one of the staff should do (his/her, their) part in making new employees feel welcome.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- S
- 6) Each of the leftovers (is, are) in the refrigerator, and you can heat (it, them) in the microwave for supper.  
P
- 7) Many of the customers seemed interested in the candles that were on sale but decided that (he/she, they) would not purchase any today.  
S
- 8) Anybody taking a GOAL English grammar course can feel proud of (himself/herself, themselves), because it is an important tool for speaking and writing correctly.  
S
- 9) Somebody left (his/her, their) winter coat on top of the red truck in the parking lot.  
S
- 10) Everyone who has the answer to the math problem is invited to raise (his/her, their) hand and share it with the class.

◆ Have an instructor check your work.

## Pronoun - Antecedent Agreement 6

Directions: Proofread these sentences carefully. Underline the subject and indicate whether it is singular or plural. Next, fix any pronoun agreement errors you find. Write Correct if the sentence has no errors.

	Singular	plural	plural	singular
Example:	<u>No one</u>	was able to make	<i>their</i>	decision easily. Change <i>their</i> to <i>his/her</i> .

- 1) Every one of the members said their time was well spent.
- 2) Each of the books had its own place on the shelf.
- 3) Any one of the representatives is welcome to have his or her say.
- 4) Neither of the sales associates was able to work their hours.
- 5) Several improved his grades over those on the previous test.
- 6) Every participant in the competition had their own coach.
- 7) Many expressed their approval of the building plan.
- 8) No one called to offer their opinion although many were unhappy.
- 9) Either of the co-workers should offer to do his or her part.
- 10) If anyone would like a copy, they may have one.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Someone left their coat on the rack near the door.
- 12) Most of these machines have their serial numbers already engraved.
- 13) One of the customers would like their refund now.
- 14) Everything is filed in their appropriate folder.
- 15) Each of the desks is scheduled to have its own telephone.
- 16) Did anyone leave their keys on the counter in the office?
- 17) Nobody knows what the future holds in store for them.
- 18) Everyone volunteering will receive his or her own name badge.
- 19) Several at the session presented his or her reports on Monday.
- 20) Part of the building can be remodeled after it closes.

◆ Check your work.

### Pronoun - Antecedent Agreement 6 - KEY

Directions: Proofread these sentences carefully. Underline the subject and indicate whether it is singular or plural. Next, fix any pronoun agreement errors you find. Write Correct if the sentence has no errors.

	Singular	plural	plural	singular
Example:	<u>No one</u>	was able to make	<i>their</i>	decision easily. Change <i>their</i> to <i>his/her</i> .

- 1) Every one of the members said *their* time was well spent. (one – sing.) his/her
- 2) Each of the books had *its* own place on the shelf. Correct (each – sing.)
- 3) Any one of the representatives is welcome to have *his or her* say. Correct (one – sing.)
- 4) Neither of the sales associates was able to work *their* hours. (neither – sing.) his/her
- 5) Several improved *his* grades over those on the previous test. (several – plural) their
- 6) Every participant in the competition had *their* own coach. (participant – sing.) his/her
- 7) Many expressed *their* approval of the building plan. Correct (many – plural)
- 8) No one called to offer *their* opinion although many were unhappy. (no one – sing.) his/her
- 9) Either of the co-workers should offer to do *his or her* part. Correct (either – sing.)
- 10) If anyone would like a copy, *they* may have one. (anyone – sing.) he/she
- ◆ Stop here and have an instructor check your work.
- 11) Someone left *their* coat on the rack near the door. (someone – sing.) his/her
- 12) Most (of these machines) have *their* serial numbers already engraved. Correct (most – plural due to the plural obj. of the prep)
- 13) One of the customers would like *their* refund now. (one – sing.) his/her
- 14) Everything is filed in *their* appropriate folder. (everything – sing.) its
- 15) Each of the desks is scheduled to have *its* own telephone. Correct (each – sing.)
- 16) Did anyone leave *their* keys on the counter in the office? (anyone – sing.) his/her
- 17) Nobody knows what the future holds in store for *them*. (nobody – sing.) him/her
- 18) Everyone volunteering will receive *his or her* own name badge. Correct (everyone – sing.)
- 19) Several at the session presented *his or her* reports on Monday. (several – plural.) their
- 20) Part (of the building) can be remodeled after *it* closes. Correct (part – singular due to the singular obj. of the prep)

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement 4  
(Indefinite Pronouns as antecedents + Verbs + reference)

Directions: Circle the correct verb and the correct pronoun(s).

Example: Everyone (has / had) a mark on (his/her / their) report card.

- 1) Someone ( has / have ) left ( his/her / their ) book on the desk.
  - 2) Everyone ( was / were ) told to give ( his/her / their ) suggestions.
  - 3) All students ( was / were ) asked to bring ( his/her / their ) own supplies.
  - 4) Each club member ( present / presents ) ( his/her / their ) own report.
  - 5) Everything ( is / are ) in ( its / their ) place.
  - 6) Every participant ( provide / provides ) ( his/her / their ) own funding.
  - 7) If anyone has any paper, will ( he/she / they ) ( lend / lends) it to me?
  - 8) One ( is / are ) usually best known in ( his/her / their ) home town.
  - 9) Somebody ( find / finds ) ( his/her / their ) items at the Lost and Found every day.
  - 10) Everybody ( try / tries ) harder to do ( his/her / their ) job well when they feel rested.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Not a member of the team ( ignore / ignores ) (his/her / their) schedule
  - 12) Each of the workers ( take / takes ) ( his/her / their ) helmet to the work site.
  - 13) Both of the guys ( take / takes ) ( his / their ) breaks at work.
  - 14) Neither of the applicants ( need / needs ) to bring ( his/her / their ) list of references to the interview.
  - 15) No one ( bring / brings ) ( his/her / their ) contribution unless reminded.
  - 16) A few of them ( was / were ) concerned about admitting ( his/her /their ) misgivings.
  - 17) Never judge anybody only on ( his/her / their ) appearance.
  - 18) Neither of my supervisors ( offer / offers ) ( his/her / their ) opinion very often.
  - 19) If someone ( calls / call ), please tell ( him/her / them ) I'll return at noon.
  - 20) Every team member ( does / do ) ( his/her / their ) best at every practice.

◆ Check your work.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement 4 - KEY  
(Indefinite Pronouns as antecedents + Verbs + reference)

Directions: Circle the correct verb and the correct pronoun(s).

Example: Everyone (has/ had ) a mark on (his/her/ their ) report card.

- 1) Someone ( HAS / have ) left ( HIS/HER / their ) book on the desk.
- 2) Everyone ( WAS / were ) told to give ( HIS/HER / their ) suggestions.
- 3) All students ( was / WERE ) asked to bring ( his/her / THEIR ) own supplies.
- 4) Each club member ( present / PRESENTS ) ( HIS/HER / their ) own report.
- 5) Everything ( IS / are ) in ( ITS / their ) place.
- 6) Every participant ( provide / PROVIDES ) ( HIS/HER / their ) own funding.
- 7) If anyone has any paper, will ( HE/SHE / they ) ( LEND/ lends ) it to me?
- 8) One ( IS / are ) usually best known in ( HIS/HER / their ) home town.
- 9) Somebody ( find / FINDS ) ( HIS/HER / their ) items at the Lost and Found every day.
- 10) Everybody ( try / TRIES ) harder to do ( HIS/HER / their ) job well when they feel rested.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Not a member of the team ( ignore / IGNORES ) ( HIS/HER / their ) schedule
- 12) Each of the workers ( take / TAKES ) ( HIS/HER / their ) helmet to the work site.
- 13) Both of the guys ( TAKE / takes ) ( his / THEIR ) breaks at work.
- 14) Neither of the applicants ( need / NEEDS ) to bring ( HIS/HER / their ) list of references to the interview.
- 15) No one ( bring / BRINGS ) ( HIS/HER / their ) contribution unless reminded.
- 16) A few of them ( was / WERE ) concerned about admitting ( his/her / **THEIR** ) misgivings.
- 17) Never judge anybody only on ( HIS/HER / their ) appearance.
- 18) Neither of my supervisors ( offer / OFFERS ) ( HIS/HER / their ) opinion very often.
- 19) If someone ( CALLS / call ), please tell ( HIM/HER / them ) I'll return at noon.
- 20) Every team member ( DOES / do ) ( HIS/HER / their ) best at every practice.

## Pronouns After Than or As - 1

Directions: Please underline the correct pronoun.

Example: He has better command of English than ( I, me). *than I have/do*

- 1) We scored higher in the hockey tournament than (they, them).
- 2) Can you sing as high as (she, her)?
- 3) Gina understands legal language as well as (he, him).
- 4) I like Roy better than (he, him).
- 5) Would you trust Ellen rather than (she, her)?
- 6) They can run as fast as (we, us).
- 7) She talked to me longer than (he, him).
- 8) Isabel pitches ball better than (she, her).
- 9) Paoua lives as near to the park as (they, them).
- 10) Jose cooks for me as often as (he, him).

### Information Box

In order to determine which pronoun to use in a comparison, say the complete clause to yourself and analyze it.

Example:

- He is as good a writer as (I, me).

Think:

- *He is as good a writer as I am.*  
[This one needs a SUBJECT pronoun.]

Example:

- I would rather choose you than (she, her).

Think:

- *I would rather choose you than I would choose HER.*  
[This one needs an OBJECT pronoun.]

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct words to complete the meaning.

- 11) I am as tall as \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12) I like you as much as \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 13) Monica is older than \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14) Fred has written to me more than \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 15) His son is as stubborn as \_\_\_\_\_.
- 16) The weather affects you more than \_\_\_\_\_.
- 17) She trusts him as much as \_\_\_\_\_ do.
- 18) We think others are happier than \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19) Does Chai walk with them as much as \_\_\_\_\_ us?
- 20) Tim drives more slowly than \_\_\_\_\_.

◆ Check your work.



### Pronouns After Than or As 1 - KEY

Directions: Please underline the correct pronoun.

Example: He has better command of English than (I, me). *than I have/do*

- 1) We scored higher in the hockey tournament than (they, them). *than they scored*
- 2) Can you sing as high as (she, her)? *as she can*
- 3) Gina understands legal language as well as (he, him). *as he understands it*
- 4) I like Roy better than (he, him). *than I like him*
- 5) Would you trust Ellen rather than (she, her)? *than (you) trust her*
- 6) They can run as fast as (we, us). *as we ran*
- 7) She talked to me longer than (he, him). *than she talked with him*
- 8) Isabel pitches ball better than (she, her). *than she pitches ball*
- 9) Paoua lives as near to the park as (they, them). *than they live/do*
- 10) Jose cooks for me as often as (he, him). *as Jose/he cooks for them*

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct pronoun and other words to complete the meaning. (Answers may vary.)

- 11) I am as tall as they are tall. (Use a subject pronoun.)
- 12) I like you as much as I like him.
- 13) Monica is older than she is. (Use a subject pronoun.)
- 14) Fred has written to me more than he has written to her.
- 15) His son is as stubborn as she is. (Use a subject pronoun.)
- 16) The weather affects you more than the weather affects me. (Use an object pronoun.)
- 17) She trusts him as much as they (trust him) do.
- 18) We think others are happier than we are. (Use a subject pronoun.)
- 19) Does Chai walk with them as much as he walks with us?
- 20) Tim drives more slowly than they drive. (Use a subject pronoun.)

PRONOUNS AFTER THAN OR AS 3

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form in the sentences below.

**Example:** George ate more than (we, us). **Answer:** George ate more than (we, us). (we do)

- 1) If I were as busy as (she, her), I'd buy the new car.
  - 2) John is more active than (I, me).
  - 3) If you eat all of your vegetables, you will soon be taller than (he, him).
  - 4) The man who won the bowling contest was younger than (I, me).
  - 5) Kathryn was a better free hand artist than (she, her).
  - 6) David wrote a better computer program than (we, us).
  - 7) Emily knows and likes her Aunt Sarah better than (I, me).
  - 8) I like to listen to Jazz more than (he, him),
  - 9) Jonah likes skiing with me better than with (she, her).
  - 10) We need help as much as (they, them) on this project.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Susie has more patience than (we, us).
  - 12) Uncle Joe thought his son was as smart as (he, him).
  - 13) She seems to know more than (I, me) about the plans.
  - 14) When practice was over, he was as tired as (she, her).
  - 15) Kris caught more fish than Kelly or (I, me).
  - 16) Dana enjoyed Jimmy's stories as much as (I, me).
  - 17) Their family goes on vacation more than (we, us) in the summer.
  - 18) Ann studies as much as (I, me), but I still get better grades than (she, her).
  - 19) Linda uses more details in her writing than (I, me).
  - 20) Joan beats Tom around the track as often as (she, her).

◆ Check your work.

PRONOUNS AFTER THAN OR AS 3 - Key

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form in the sentences below.

**Example:** George ate more than (we, us). **Answer:** George ate more than (we, us). (we do)

- 1) If I were as busy as (she, her), I'd buy the new car. (*she was*)
  - 2) John is more active than (I, me). (*I am*)
  - 3) If you eat all of your vegetables, you will soon be taller than (he, him). (*he is*)
  - 4) The man who won the bowling contest was younger than (I, me). (*I am*)
  - 5) Kathryn was a better free hand artist than (she, her). (*she was*)
  - 6) David wrote a better computer program than (we, us). (*we wrote*)
  - 7) Emily knows and likes her Aunt Sarah better than (I, me). (*Emily likes me*)
  - 8) I like to listen to Jazz more than (he, him). (*This one could be either – than I like him or than he does*)
  - 9) Jonah likes skiing with me better than with (she, her). (*Jonah likes skiing with her*)
  - 10) We need help as much as (they, them) on this project. (*they do*)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Susie has more patience than (we, us). (*we do*)
  - 12) Uncle Joe thought his son was as smart as (he, him). (*he is*)
  - 13) She seems to know more than (I, me) about the plans. (*I do*)
  - 14) When practice was over, he was as tired as (she, her). (*she was*)
  - 15) Kris caught more fish than Kelly or (I, me). (*I did*)
  - 16) Dana enjoyed Jimmy's stories as much as (I, me). (*I did*)
  - 17) Their family goes on vacation more than (we, us) in the summer. (*we do*)
  - 18) Ann studies as much as (I, me), but I still get better grades than (she, her). (*I do*) (*she does*)
  - 19) Linda uses more details in her writing than (I, me). (*I do*)
  - 20) Joan beats Tom around the track as often as (she, her). (*Joan beats her*)

**INFORMATION SHEET 5**

Pronoun Review

	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Object</b>	<b>Possessive</b>		<b>Reflexive</b>	
<b>1</b>	I	me	my	mine	myself	<b>Singular</b> <b>1</b>
	you	you	your	yours	yourself	
	he	him	his	his	himself	
	she	her	her	hers	herself	
	it	it	its	its	itself	
<b>2+</b>	we	us	our	ours	ourselves	<b>Plural</b> <b>2+</b>
	you they	you them	your their	yours theirs	yourselves themselves	
	a) Doer b) After <u>being</u> verbs	a) After preps b) After <u>action</u> verbs	Ownership-- but NO apostrophes		Notice – NO <del>hissself, ourself,</del> <del>themself</del>	

**What Is a Pronoun?**

Pronouns take the place of nouns:	John saw John’s dream car. John wanted the car for John. John saw <u>his</u> dream car. <u>He</u> wanted <u>it</u> for <u>himself</u> .
-----------------------------------	--

**Helpful Hints**

1. a) Use **subject** pronouns after being verbs (*is, am, are, was, were, be, being, been*).

The man in the car was **he**. It is **she** on the phone. That must have been **they**.

These sentences make sense backwards or as questions: He *was the man in the car*; *Is she on the phone?*  
(Being verbs are like = signs)

b) **Subject** (“doer”) pronouns start sentences. (**She** and **I** went to the store. **We** and **they** met there.)

2. a) Use **object** pronouns after prepositions (*of, on, in, for, to, with, between, etc.--see Preps Info Sheet*).

Just between **you** and **me**, Pat is getting a promotion.

Please bring the completed forms to **him** or **her**.

b) Use **object** pronouns after action verbs. (We called **them**. Do you know **him** and **her**?)

3. In **compounds** (with **and / or**), try each pronoun alone, and use the one that sounds right.

**WRONG:** They came to dinner with he and I. Try: They came...with he. (no) They came with I. (no)

Cross out *and I*: They came to dinner with **he and I**. (with **him**? Yes!)

Then cross out *he and*: They came to dinner with ~~he and~~ **I**? (with *me*? Yes!)

**RIGHT:** They came to dinner with **him and me**.

(Notice that **I** is **not** always correct after *and*. Be sure to check how the pronoun is used.) Also, I/me pronouns usually come last--it is polite to name the other person first. (*She and I, him or me, etc.*)

4. Use a **possessive** pronoun before a gerund (an *-ing* ending noun that names an activity).

They admired **our** singing. We disagreed with **his** coaching.

5. Cross out words **between commas**. Pronouns match the noun that's left.

Chris, as well as ~~her assistants~~, is always in **her** office on time.

6. THE **WE/US** RULE: When a **pronoun** comes **next to a noun**, cross out the noun--it only repeats the same information.

Us ~~guys~~ went hunting? No--  
**We** went hunting. || B.J. asked us ~~neighbors~~ to help. Yes:  
 B.J. asked **us** to help.

7. Subject words connected by **or, nor, but also**: Cross out the first part.

~~Either Mary or~~ her sons **are** washing **their** clothes. ?? Yes.  
~~Neither Lee nor~~ Joe **were** accepting **their** award. ?? No. Joe **was** accepting **his** award.

⇒ LOOK OUT FOR THE **either...or/neither...nor** **CONNECTORS** AND THE PRONOUNS **either of / neither of**. (See #10 below).\*

8. In comparisons using **than** or **as**, mentally fill in the missing words.

We like you better than **him**. (We like you better than we like him.)  
 She sings better than **I**. (She sings better than I do)

9. **Reflexive** pronouns can refer only to a person or thing previously mentioned in the sentence.

They saw **themselves** on TV. He gave **himself** a pat on the back.

RIGHT: Thanks for inviting her and me. WRONG: Thanks for inviting her and ~~myself~~.

10. **Indefinite Pronouns**:

Always Singular	Always Plural	Either Singular or Plural
every <u>thing</u> every <u>body</u> every <u>one</u> something    somebody    someone anything    anybody    anyone nothing    nobody    no one  no            one            (every) each            another * <b>neither</b> (of)    * <b>either</b> (of)    Don't confuse these pronouns with either/or, neither/nor (see hint # 7).	both many few several others	most            fractions any            per cents none            majority all part some
HELPFUL HINT !	HINT !	HELPFUL HINT !
Use <u>only his, her, its / he, she, it</u> to refer to the singular indefinite pronouns. Do NOT use plurals ( <del>they, them, their, or themselves</del> ) to refer to singular pronouns.	Use <u>they, them, their</u> to refer to these plural pronouns.	Same number as noun it refers to. <u>All</u> of the <u>book</u> ...it/its (singular) <u>None</u> of the <u>books</u> ...they/their (plural)

## PRONOUNS 5 – MIXED PRACTICE

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun(s) in each sentence.

Example: Tell Judy to give (you, yourself) a raise.

- 1) Tom's mother was tired of (him, his) whining.
- 2) (We, Us) teachers love to work with students.
- 3) Please give the packages to (we, us) customers.
- 4) The bride and groom planned the wedding by (themselves, themselves).
- 5) Angela gives (we, us) underclassmen no credit.
- 6) Barb is enchanted with (their, them) singing.
- 7) Please buy some water for (we, us) and (they, them).
- 8) I plan on buying (me, myself) a Miata when I retire.
- 9) (Your, You) begging will not affect my decision.
- 10) (They, Them) and (we, us) annoyed (she, her) by yelling all night.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) The neighbors called (we, us) bikers careless.
- 12) Sally found (they, them) hiding in the closet.
- 13) I'm going to write (she, her) and (he, him) a note explaining the directions.
- 14) The best singer in the band was (she, her).
- 15) (We, Us) workers need better pay and benefits.
- 16) Casey talked (him, himself) into buying a new coat.
- 17) The manager hates (us, our) being late for work.
- 18) The children like to give (we, us) parents amazing gifts.
- 19) I told (me, myself) to slow down on the snowy roads
- 20) The man who won the contest was (he, him).

◆ Check your work.

## PRONOUNS 5 – MIXED PRACTICE

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun(s) in each sentence.

Example: Tell Judy to give (you, yourself) a raise.

- 1) Tom's mother was tired of (him, his) whining.
- 2) (We, Us) teachers love to work with students.
- 3) Please give the packages to (we, us) customers.
- 4) The bride and groom planned the wedding by (themselves, themselves).
- 5) Angela gives (we, us) underclassmen no credit.
- 6) Barb is enchanted with (their, them) singing.
- 7) Please buy some water for (we, us) and (they, them).
- 8) I plan on buying (me, myself) a Miata when I retire.
- 9) (Your, You) begging will not affect my decision.
- 10) (They, Them) and (we, us) annoyed (she, her) by yelling all night.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) The neighbors called (we, us) bikers careless.
- 12) Sally found (they, them) hiding in the closet.
- 13) I'm going to write (she, her) and (he, him) a note explaining the directions.
- 14) The best singer in the band was (she, her).
- 15) (We, Us) workers need better pay and benefits.
- 16) Casey talked (him, himself) into buying a new coat.
- 17) The manager hates (us, our) being late for work.
- 18) The children like to give (we, us) parents amazing gifts.
- 19) I told (me, myself) to slow down on the snowy roads
- 20) The man who won the contest was (he, him).

◆ Check your work.

## Quotes Practice 3 - Mixed (Rules Q1 - Q6)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by correctly applying the quotation mark rules. If no quotation marks are needed, write Correct.

Example:	Should I take the bus or the subway? Peter asked. "Should I take the bus or the subway?" Peter asked.
----------	--

- 1) The Road Not Taken is perhaps Robert Frost's most well-known poem.
- 2) *Supersize*, a new dictionary entry in 2006, means to greatly increase the size, amount, or extent of.
- 3) I'm tired, yawned Martha, because I haven't had my coffee yet.
- 4) Amy often heard her children say that they wanted a bigger allowance.
- 5) Children often mispronounce spaghetti as psghetti.
- 6) *Medical dramas such as ER and Grey's Anatomy have always been popular.* (as it would appear in handwriting)
- 7) *Pride and Prejudice* is only one example of a classic novel that has been made into a movie.
- 8) Do you think I could drive? Sam asked.
- 9) *Feliz Navidad* is the Spanish equivalent of Happy Christmas.
- 10) Brad asked if he could take the girls to the movies tomorrow.
- 11) What exactly do you mean by broken?
- 12) Most children know the song Old MacDonald before they begin school.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 13) *If you want to make healthy meals, then Cooking Light is the magazine for you.* (as it would appear in handwriting)
- 14) She asked if she was going to get the starring role.
- 15) A **surrey** is defined as a four-wheeled two-seated horse-drawn pleasure carriage.
- 16) It annoys me when people say they're going to the library instead of the library.
- 17) Kyra told them, You'll be sorry if you eat all of the candy tonight.
- 18) It amazes me, he said, that people smoke even though they know the dangers.
- 19) Carpe diem is a Latin phrase that is commonly translated as seize the day.



20) The shortest chapter in my history book is The Kennedy Years.

21) *Did you know that the Pirates of the Caribbean movies are based on an amusement park ride?* (as it would appear in handwriting)

22) Vicky yelled at the child to get out of the road.

23) She thought going out meant Olive Garden, but he was thinking of Taco Bell.

24) That magazine article Sleep, Snoring, and the Blues helped me deal with my husband's snoring.

◆ Check your work.

Quotes Practice 3 – Mixed (Rules Q1 – Q6) KEY

- 1) "The Road Not Taken" is perhaps Robert Frost's most well-known poem.
- 2) *Supersize*, a new dictionary entry in 2006, means "to greatly increase the size, amount, or extent of."
- 3) "I'm tired," yawned Martha, "because I haven't had my coffee yet."
- 4) Amy often heard her children say that they wanted a bigger allowance. **Correct**
- 5) Children often mispronounce spaghetti as "psghetti."
- 6) *Medical dramas such as ER and Grey's Anatomy have always been popular.* (as it would appear in handwriting)
- 7) *Pride and Prejudice* is only one example of a classic novel that has been made into a movie. **Correct**
- 8) "Do you think I could drive?" Sam asked.
- 9) *Feliz Navidad* is the Spanish equivalent of "Happy Christmas."
- 10) Brad asked if he could take the girls to the movies tomorrow. **Correct**
- 11) What exactly do you mean by "broken"?
- 12) Most children know the song "Old MacDonald" before they begin school.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 13) *If you want to make healthy meals, then Cooking Light is the magazine for you.* (as it would appear in handwriting)
- 14) She asked if she was going to get the starring role. **Correct**
- 15) A **surrey** is defined as "a four-wheeled two-seated horse-drawn pleasure carriage."
- 16) It annoys me when people say they're going to the "library" instead of the library.
- 17) Kyra told them, "You'll be sorry if you eat all of the candy tonight."
- 18) "It amazes me," he said, "that people smoke even though they know the dangers."
- 19) *Carpe diem* is a Latin phrase that is commonly translated as "seize the day."
- 20) The shortest chapter in my history book is "The Kennedy Years."
- 21) *Did you know that the Pirates of the Caribbean movies are based on an amusement park ride?* (as it would appear in handwriting)
- 22) Vicky yelled at the child to get out of the road. **Correct**
- 23) She thought "going out" meant Olive Garden, but he was thinking of Taco Bell.
- 24) That magazine article "Sleep, Snoring, and the Blues" helped me deal with my husband's snoring.

Quotes Practice 1  
(Rules Q1-Q4)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by correctly applying the quotation mark rules. If none are needed, write Correct.

Example: Robert Frost's poem The Road Not Taken is a favorite of mine.  
Robert Frost's poem "The Road Not Taken" is a favorite of mine.  
"The purpose of life," stated Robert Byrne, "is a life of purpose."

- 1) Have you ever read the poem Annabel Lee by Poe?
- 2) *Poisonwood Bible is a wonderful novel.* [As it would appear in handwriting.]
- 3) Our teacher said, Tonight's homework includes reading the Chapters 4 through 6.
- 4) The magazine *Seventeen* is popular with teens.
- 5) The short story Father Goes to Court is very clever.
- 6) Tran tells me, said Matthew, you know his sister Houa.
- 7) Everyone take cover! we heard over the loudspeaker as the storm approached.
- 8) Did Stephen Foster write the song Swanee River?
- 9) My friends asked, Have you ever stayed in a bed and breakfast cottage?
- ◆ Stop and check your work.
- 10) The Gift of the Magi is a favorite Christmas story.
- 11) *I receive The Post Crescent, Appleton's local newspaper, only on weekends.*  
[As it would appear in handwriting.]
- 12) *Crash* is an excellent movie for all people to see.
- 13) John Donne's elegy No Man Is An Island has always touched my soul.
- 14) Robert Louis Stevenson's To Any Reader starts his book of poems.
- 15) Please read Man-made Disaster in *The World* magazine.
- 16) My classmates exclaimed, Eugene O'Neil's play *The Iceman Cometh* is depressing!
- 17) The mechanic said that my car will need a new engine.
- 18) Most cats, explained my veterinarian, seem to have minds of their own.
- 19) Can you find someone to install my dishwasher? my brother asked.
- 20) How long, asked my roommate, can we keep this cheese?

Quotes Practice 1  
(Rules Q1-Q4)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by correctly applying the quotation mark rules. If none are needed, write Correct.

Example: Robert Frost's poem The Road Not Taken is a favorite of mine.  
Robert Frost's poem "The Road Not Taken" is a favorite of mine.  
"The purpose of life," stated Robert Byrne, "is a life of purpose."

- 1) Have you ever read the poem "Annabel Lee" by Poe?
- 2) *Poisonwood Bible* is a wonderful novel. [As it would appear in handwriting.]
- 3) Our teacher said, "Tonight's homework includes reading the Chapters 4 through 6. "
- 4) The magazine *Seventeen* is popular with teens. Correct
- 5) The short story "Father Goes to Court" is very clever.
- 6) "Tran tells me, " said Matthew, "you know his sister Houa. "
- 7) "Everyone take cover! " we heard over the loudspeaker as the storm approached.
- 8) Did Stephen Foster write the song "Swanee River"?
- 9) My friends asked, " Have you ever stayed in a bed and breakfast cottage? "
- ◆ Stop and check your work.
- 10) "The Gift of the Magi" is a favorite Christmas story.
- 11) I receive *The Post Crescent*, *Appleton's local newspaper*, only on weekends.
- 12) *Crash* is an excellent movie for all people to see. Correct
- 13) John Donne's elegy "No Man Is An Island" has always touched my soul.
- 14) Robert Louis Stevenson's "To Any Reader" starts his book of poems.
- 15) Please read "Man-made Disaster" in *The World* magazine.
- 16) My classmates exclaimed, "Eugene O'Neil's play *The Iceman Cometh* is depressing! "
- 17) The mechanic said that my car will need a new engine. Correct
- 18) "Most cats, " explained my veterinarian, "seem to have minds of their own. "
- 19) "Can you find someone to install my dishwasher? " my brother asked.
- 20) "How long, " asked my roommate, " can we keep this cheese? "

## Quotes Practice 2 (Rules Q3-Q4)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by correctly applying the quotation mark rules. You may also need to add commas, periods, exclamation marks, question marks, and capital letters. If no additional punctuation marks are needed, write Correct.

Example:	Stop before you cross the street my mother said. "Stop before you cross the street, " my mother said.
----------	--

- 1) Look out the driver yelled.
- 2) Mary said she would be late.
- 3) I am looking forward to the hockey game said Aaron.
- 4) Everyone yelled We won the NCAA Championship!
- 5) That was awesome Mario and Heath said at the same time.
- 6) Arlo said that he wanted to get season hockey tickets for next season.
- 7) Be quiet said the instructor during the test. People are trying to think.
- 8) Practice what you preach my grandma always said.
- 9) Johan responded Not in my lifetime!
- 10) We plan to leave early replied Martin.

◆ Stop and check your work.

- 11) Will you come with me Marta pleaded. I really need the support.
- 12) The instructor said that she would be late.
- 13) Be at the park at noon Antonia said or we will start without you.
- 14) Spring is here they all shouted at once. hurray
- 15) Max quipped don't be such a big baby
- 16) Who asked if school would be canceled today
- 17) I was confused about the assignment Tom stated
- 18) Tanya asked if her sister had called.
- 19) Twilight explained Dad is the time just before dark
- 20) Ryan inquired which is the quickest route to the airport

Quotes Practice 2 - KEY  
(Rules Q3-Q4)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by correctly applying the quotation mark rules. You may also need to add commas, periods, exclamation marks, question marks, and capital letters. If no additional punctuation marks are needed, write Correct.

Example:	Stop before you cross the street my mother said. "Stop before you cross the street, " my mother said.
----------	--

- 1) "Look out ! " the driver yelled.
- 2) Mary said she would be late. Correct
- 3) " I am looking forward to the hockey game , " said Aaron.
- 4) Everyone yelled , "We won the NCAA Championship! "
- 5) "That was awesome! " Mario and Heath said at the same time.
- 6) Arlo said that he wanted to get season hockey tickets for next season. Correct
- 7) "Be quiet , " said the instructor, "during the test. People are trying to think. "
- 8) "Practice what you preach , " my grandma always said.
- 9) Johan responded, " Not in my lifetime! "
- 10) " We plan to leave early , " replied Martin.

◆ Stop and check your work.

- 11) "Will you come with me?" Marta pleaded. "I really need the support. "
- 12) The instructor said that she would be late. Correct
- 13) "Be at the park at noon , " Antonia said, "or we will start without you. "
- 14) "Spring is here! " they all shouted at once. "Hurray "
- 15) Max quipped , " Don't be such a big baby! "
- 16) Who asked if school would be canceled today ?
- 17) "I was confused about the assignment , " Tom stated.
- 18) Tanya asked if her sister had called. Correct
- 19) "Twilight , " explained Dad , " is the time just before dark. "
- 20) Ryan inquired , "Which is the quickest route to the airport ? "

## Run-On Sentences 1b

- Directions:
- Re-write items to correct run-on sentences.
  - Change punctuation and capitalization as needed.
  - Write *Correct* if there are no errors.

Example: Tao is my best friend he has a new wife.

Tao, my best friend, has a new wife.

Tao is my best friend, and he has a new wife.

There are several ways to correct run-on sentences.

- 1) They are attending a training workshop they will teach others when they return.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2) You will be reimbursed promptly be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3) He is saving for a vacation next winter is when he will travel.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4) All the snow at the ski resorts will melt unless it gets and stays colder.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5) Bats fly at night they sleep during the day.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6) A customer complains a clerk has been rude.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7) This January has been unusually warm we can't expect it to last until spring.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 8) No one speaks for her she prefers to discuss issues in person.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 9) It was necessary for getting herself to work Joni didn't want to repair her car.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 10) Technology has changed so quickly in the past few years I can't seem to keep up.

\_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

### Run-On Sentences 1b - KEY

- Directions:
- Re-write items to correct run-on sentences.
  - Change punctuation and capitalization as needed.
  - Write *Correct* if there are no errors.

Example: Tao is my best friend he has a new wife.

Tao, my best friend, has a new wife.

Tao is my best friend, and he has a new wife.

There are several ways to correct run-on sentences.

- They are attending a training workshop they will teach others when they return.  
They are attending a training workshop, so they will teach others when they return.
- You want to be reimbursed promptly be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time.  
If you want to be reimbursed promptly, be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time.
- He is saving for a vacation next winter is when he will travel.  
He is saving for a vacation although next winter is when he will travel.
- All the snow at the ski resorts will melt unless it gets and stays colder.  
CORRECT
- Bats fly at night they sleep during the day.  
Bats fly at night, but they sleep during the day.
- A customer complains a clerk has been rude.  
A customer complains when a clerk has been rude.
- This January has been unusually warm we can't expect it to last until spring.  
This January has been unusually warm, yet we can't expect it to last until spring.
- No one speaks for her she prefers to discuss issues in person.  
No one speaks for her because she prefers to discuss issues in person.
- It was necessary for getting herself to work Joni didn't want to repair her car.  
Although it was necessary for getting herself to work, Joni didn't want to repair her car.
- Technology has changed so quickly in the past few years I can't seem to keep up.  
Because technology has changed so quickly in the past few years, I can't seem to keep up.

◆ Because there are several ways to make "legal repairs" to run-on sentences, if you're unsure about your answers, check with an instructor.



## Sentence Fragments 1a

Directions: Identify the following word groups as Sentence or Fragment. For the fragments, add words to form a complete sentence.

Example: Tao, my best friend with a new wife. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_ Tao, my best friend, has a new wife. \_\_\_\_\_

1) Attending their training workshops. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

2) Be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

3) Because he is saving for a vacation. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

4) Whoever can come. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

5) Birds fly. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

6) When a customer complains. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

7) No idea about the difficulty between you and me. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

8) Speaking for her. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

9) Although Joni didn't want to repair her car. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

10) The technology team, Harry and I. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

## Sentence Fragments 1a - KEY

Directions: Identify the following word groups as Sentence or Fragment. For the fragments, add words to form a complete sentence.

Example: Tao, my best friend with a new wife. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

Tao, my best friend, has a new wife.

Answers will vary.

1) Attending their training workshops. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

2) Be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

3) Because he is saving for a vacation. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

4) Whoever can come. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

5) Birds fly. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

6) When a customer complains. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

7) No idea about the difficulty between you and me. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

8) Speaking for her. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

9) Although Joni didn't want to repair her car. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

10) The technology team, Harry and I. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

◆ Because there are several ways you can fix fragments and write your sentences correctly, check with an instructor if you are unsure about your answers.



## Sentence Fragments 1a

Directions: Identify the following word groups as Sentence or Fragment. For the fragments, add words to form a complete sentence.

Example: Tao, my best friend with a new wife. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_ Tao, my best friend, has a new wife. \_\_\_\_\_

1) Attending their training workshops. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

2) Be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

3) Because he is saving for a vacation. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

4) Whoever can come. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

5) Birds fly. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

6) When a customer complains. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

7) No idea about the difficulty between you and me. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

8) Speaking for her. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

9) Although Joni didn't want to repair her car. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

10) The technology team, Harry and I. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

## Sentence Fragments 1a - KEY

Directions: Identify the following word groups as Sentence or Fragment. For the fragments, add words to form a complete sentence.

Example: Tao, my best friend with a new wife. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

Tao, my best friend, has a new wife.

Answers will vary.

1) Attending their training workshops. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

2) Be sure to get your end-of-the-month reports in on time. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

3) Because he is saving for a vacation. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

4) Whoever can come. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

5) Birds fly. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

6) When a customer complains. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

7) No idea about the difficulty between you and me. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

8) Speaking for her. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

9) Although Joni didn't want to repair her car. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

10) The technology team, Harry and I. *Sentence - or - Fragment*

\_\_\_\_\_

◆ Because there are several ways you can fix fragments and write your sentences correctly, check with an instructor if you are unsure about your answers.



Choosing Between A and An  
(Adjectives & Adverbs 7)

Directions: Please complete the following sentences using a or an.

Example: Mexico is \_\_\_\_\_ exciting country. Mexico is an exciting country.

- 1) Have you ever watched \_\_\_\_\_ hawk soar?
- 2) I need to make \_\_\_\_\_ NCR copy.
- 3) Marcus has \_\_\_\_\_ authentic model of a battleship.
- 4) Josie has seen \_\_\_\_\_ eagle soar.
- 5) The recipe requires that I buy \_\_\_\_\_ herb called cumin.
- 6) My mother is \_\_\_\_\_ excellent cook.
- 7) His mother is \_\_\_\_\_ horrible cook.
- 8) Sam loves to eat \_\_\_\_\_ apple every day.
- 9) His sister Marta would rather have \_\_\_\_\_ candy bar.
- 10) The author wrote \_\_\_\_\_ history of her family.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) We are going to \_\_\_\_\_ amusement park in June.
- 12) When is \_\_\_\_\_ good time to call?
- 13) The statue is \_\_\_\_\_ exact copy of the original.
- 14) Lor arrived in \_\_\_\_\_ new Lexus.
- 15) The child was eating \_\_\_\_\_ orange popsicle.
- 16) Oshkosh is less than \_\_\_\_\_ hour south of Appleton.
- 17) A smile is recognized as \_\_\_\_\_ universal symbol of happiness.
- 18) The parents presented \_\_\_\_\_ united front as they discussed curfews with their teenage children.
- 19) They came to \_\_\_\_\_ understanding they all could respect.
- 20) Show the world \_\_\_\_\_ happy face.

◆ Check your work.

Choosing Between A and An - KEY  
(Adjectives & Adverbs 7)

Directions: Please complete the following sentences using a or an.

Example: Mexico is \_\_\_\_\_ exciting country. Mexico is an exciting country.

- 1) Have you ever watched A hawk soar?
  - 2) I need to make AN NCR copy.
  - 3) Marcus has AN authentic model of a battleship.
  - 4) Josie has seen AN eagle soar.
  - 5) The recipe requires that I buy AN herb called cumin.
  - 6) My mother is AN excellent cook.
  - 7) His mother is A horrible cook.
  - 8) Sam loves to eat AN apple every day.
  - 9) His sister Marta would rather have A candy bar.
  - 10) The author wrote A history of her family.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) We are going to AN amusement park in June.
  - 12) When is A good time to call?
  - 13) The statue is AN exact copy of the original.
  - 14) Lor arrived in A new Lexus.
  - 15) The child was eating AN orange popsicle.
  - 16) Oshkosh is less than AN hour south of Appleton.
  - 17) A smile is recognized as A universal symbol of happiness.
  - 18) The parents presented A united front as they discussed curfews with their teenage children.
  - 19) They came to AN understanding they all could respect.
  - 20) Show the world A happy face.



Subject and Object Pronouns  
(Pronouns 2)

Directions: Correct any pronoun errors in the following sentences. Some may be correct; if so, write correct.

Example: We agreed to go along with <sup>him</sup>~~he~~.

- 1) Our conference was wonderful training for Emmett and she.
- 2) Everyone was relieved at them completing the report on time.
- 3) The agents were puzzled about him trying to avoid the questions.
- 4) Jason plays in a band with she and them.
- 5) Their office asked Ms. Jones and I to be accountable for fund raising.
- 6) Both accountants, Wilson and she, were promoted at the same time.
- 7) They had no idea about the difficulty between you and I.
- 8) Speaking for she and Frank, we asked for further cooperation.
- 9) Our manager is weary of them disagreeing about any new plans.
- 10) The technology team, Harry and me, made several decisions.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Inflation is difficult for we struggling workers.
- 12) Me and my cousin like to go snowmobiling near Lake Michigan.
- 13) They sent the manager and myself an excellent report.
- 14) We expect Frederick and he to fax us their ideas.
- 15) Ms. Patricia Harris commuted daily to advise he and his assistants.
- 16) Him and me are going to the show on Friday.
- 17) Did you see Marta and she when they performed in the talent show?
- 18) The test results were given to the instructor and myself to record.
- 19) It seemed as if he were singing just to you and I.
- 20) Flowers were delivered for everyone but Pangle and she.

◆ Check your work.

Subject and Object Pronouns  
(Pronouns 2)

Directions: Correct any pronoun errors in the following sentences. Some may be correct; if so, write correct.

Example: We agreed to go along with ~~he~~ <sup>him</sup>.

- 1) Our conference was wonderful training for Emmett and **she**. (her)
- 2) Everyone was relieved at **them** completing the report on time. (their)
- 3) The agents were puzzled about **him** trying to avoid the questions. (his)
- 4) Jason plays in a band with **she** and them. (her)
- 5) Their office asked Ms. Jones and **I** to be accountable for fund raising. (me)
- 6) Both accountants, Wilson and she, were promoted at the same time. (correct)
- 7) They had no idea about the difficulty between you and **I**. (me)
- 8) Speaking for **she** and Frank, we asked for further cooperation. (her)
- 9) Our manager is weary of **them** disagreeing about any new plans. (their)
- 10) The technology team, Harry and **me**, made several decisions. (I)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Inflation is difficult for **we** struggling workers. (us)
- 12) **Me** and my cousin like to go snowmobiling near Lake Michigan. (my cousin and I)
- 13) They sent the manager and **myself** an excellent report. (me)
- 14) We expect Frederick and **he** to fax us their ideas. (him)
- 15) Ms. Patricia Harris commuted daily to advise **he** and his assistants. (him)
- 16) **Him and me** are going to the show on Friday. (He and I)
- 17) Did you see Marta and **she** when they performed in the talent show? (her)
- 18) The test results were given to the instructor and **myself** to record. (me)
- 19) It seemed as if he were singing just to you and **I**. (me)
- 20) Flowers were delivered for everyone but Pangle and **she**. (her)

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUNS (Pronouns 1)

Directions:   a) Find the pronoun errors.  
              b) Write the correct pronoun form.

Example: ~~Her~~ and Ann went to a movie on Saturday evening.        she

1. Pointing to he and Marty, John selected the co-managers. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The teachers, Chris and me, directed the play. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Neil went to Freedom to see she and her band. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Test time is very hard on we students. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The group gave Sue and myself a round of applause. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Me and my father went shopping in Green Bay. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The teacher is uncomfortable with them arguing in class. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He will have to meet she and Ellen at the bus. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Him running for mayor surprised all of us. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The experience was a sad lesson for Andy and he. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11. The team made Betty and I responsible for sorting mail. \_\_\_\_\_
12. The students were surprised at him singing. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Let's divide the candy between you and I. \_\_\_\_\_
14. The cooks, Paul and her, made the birthday cake. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Everybody was unhappy with he and me. \_\_\_\_\_
16. The reunion was planned by Woody and myself. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Us students provided the teacher with many problems. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Her and I went the Fox Valley Mall yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Tell me about you driving in that awful storm last week. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Rico is coming with him and I tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUNS – KEY  
(Pronouns 1)

- Directions: a) Find the pronoun errors.  
b) Write the correct pronoun form.

Example: ~~Her~~ and Ann went to a movie on Saturday evening. she

1. Pointing to ~~he~~ and Marty, John selected the co-managers. him
  2. The teachers, Chris and ~~me~~, directed the play. I
  3. Neil went to Freedom to see ~~she~~ and her band. her
  4. Test time is very hard on ~~we~~ students. us
  5. The group gave Sue and ~~myself~~ a round of applause. me
  6. ~~Me and my father~~ went shopping in Green Bay. My father and I (I)
  7. The teacher is uncomfortable with ~~them~~ arguing in class. their
  8. He will have to meet ~~she~~ and Ellen at the bus. her
  9. ~~Him~~ running for mayor surprised all of us. his
  10. The experience was a sad lesson for Andy and ~~he~~. him
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. The team made Betty and ~~I~~ responsible for sorting mail. me
  12. The students were surprised at ~~him~~ singing. his
  13. Let's divide the candy between you and ~~I~~. me
  14. The cooks, Paul and ~~her~~, made the birthday cake. she
  15. Everybody was unhappy with ~~he~~ and me. him
  16. The reunion was planned by Woody and ~~myself~~. me
  17. ~~Us~~ students provided the teacher with many problems. We
  18. ~~Her~~ and I went the Fox Valley Mall yesterday. She
  19. Tell me about ~~you~~ driving in that awful storm last week. your
  20. Rico is coming with him and ~~I~~ tomorrow. me

◆ Check your work.

## Subject and Object Pronouns (Pronouns 4)

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in the following sentences.

Example: We agreed to go along with (he, him). him

- 1) Calvin sent (we, us) a secret message.
  - 2) There is a telephone call for (she, her).
  - 3) Darkness always frightens (he, him) and (I, me).
  - 4) (I, Me) found some plums in the refrigerator.
  - 5) Tell Terrance and (I, me) about the new kitchen plans.
  - 6) (She, Her) will be spending three weeks in New York.
  - 7) Lee probably gave his book to Moua or (she, her).
  - 8) (We, Us) farmers are going fishing.
  - 9) (Him, He) and (them, they) mad the decision about the latest sales promotion.
  - 10) Krista and (he, him) told (they, them) about your plans.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Please give Jessica and (I, me) the answer.
  - 12) Roberto and (she, her) will vacation for three weeks in Texas.
  - 13) This college gave (we, us) students special training.
  - 14) (They, Them) will visit (he, him) and (she, her) on Saturday.
  - 15) Will (they, them) call Ms. Torres or (I, me) when (they, them) arrive?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

*Directions: Make any corrections to pronoun usage errors in the following sentences:*

- 16) Can you help to solve this problem between she and I?
- 17) Isaak and me have been cleaning the house.
- 18) Both the manager and us girls missed the last bus.
- 19) I'm not sure whether him or me can attend the meeting.
- 20) Did you ask yourselves whether her was the one at the door?

Subject and Object Pronouns - Key  
(Pronouns 4)

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun in the following sentences.

Example: We agreed to go along with (he, him). him

- 1) Calvin sent (we, us) a secret message. (us)
- 2) There is a telephone call for (she, her). (her)
- 3) Darkness always frightens (he, him) and (I, me). (him, me)
- 4) (I, Me) found some plums in the refrigerator. ( I )
- 5) Tell Terrance and (I, me) about the new kitchen plans. ( me )
- 6) (She, Her) will be spending three weeks in New York. (she)
- 7) Lee probably gave his book to Moua or (she, her). (her)
- 8) (We, Us) farmers are going fishing. (we)
- 9) (Him, He) and (them, they) mad the decision about the latest sales promotion. (He, )
- 10) Krista and (he, him) told (they, them) about your plans. (he, them)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Please give Jessica and (I, me) the answer. (me)
- 12) Roberto and (she, her) will vacation for three weeks in Texas. (she)
- 13) This college gave (we, us) students special training. (us)
- 14) (They, Them) will visit (he, him) and (she, her) on Saturday. (they, him, her)
- 15) Will (they, them) call Ms. Torres or (I, me) when (they, them) arrive? (they, me, they)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

*Directions: Make any corrections to pronoun usage errors in the following sentences:*

- 16) Can you help to solve this problem between ~~she~~ and ~~I~~? (her, me)
- 17) Isaak and ~~me~~ have been cleaning the house. ( I )
- 18) Both the manager and ~~us~~ girls missed the last bus. (we)
- 19) I'm not sure whether ~~him~~ or ~~me~~ can attend the meeting. (he, I)
- 20) Did you ask ~~yourselves~~ whether ~~her~~ was the one at the door? (yourselves, she)

## Subjects and Predicates 2 (Complete + Simple)

Directions:   **a.** Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and the complete predicate each sentence.  
                  **b.** ~~Cross out~~ prepositional phrases.  
                  **c.** Circle the simple subject and simple predicate.

Example:   All of the fans in the stadium / yelled at the completed pass for a 50-yard gain.

- 1) A bolt of lightning slithered like a snake in many directions in the night sky.
  - 2) The white, fluffy snow melted with the afternoon sun.
  - 3) Baseball in the summer is a great family pastime.
  - 4) The rocking chair on the porch belonged to my dear Aunt Madeline.
  - 5) Along with the rest of the group, Michelle enjoyed a dish of chocolate ice cream.
  - 6) The spoon from the set of sterling silverware fell behind the china hutch.
  - 7) Sand from the beach sifted out of my right shoe and onto the kitchen floor.
  - 8) The children from the neighborhood filtered into the school playground before the start of the softball game.
  - 9) Backpacks of every size and color hung on pegs in the school hallway.
  - 10) The eighteen-wheeler drove out of the truck stop parking lot and onto the highway.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) The beautiful seashells along the seashore were white and sparkling in the sunlight.
  - 12) After a long wait, the family finally opened the front door of their new home.
  - 13) The best part of the book is the ending.
  - 14) The brick house on the corner has a built-in pool in the backyard.
  - 15) Many people choose to eat popcorn with lots of butter at the movies.
  - 16) After the rain, the children ran outside to play in the puddles on the driveway.
  - 17) During breakfast, we could hear the birds singing in the trees.
  - 18) The big, goose-down pillow belonged on the king-sized bed in my parents' bedroom.
  - 19) John's leather wallet contains the school pictures of his nieces and nephews.
  - 20) The chocolate candy with the caramel and nuts is a top-seller for the local candy merchant.

## Subjects and Predicates 2 - KEY (Complete & Simple + Prep Phrases)

Directions: **a.** Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and the complete predicate in each sentence. **b.** Cross out prepositional phrases. **c.** Circle the simple subject and simple predicate.

Example: ~~All of the fans in the stadium~~ / **yelled** at the completed pass for a 50-yard gain.

- 1) A ~~bolt of lightning~~ / **slithered** like a snake in many directions in the night sky.
- 2) The white, fluffy ~~snow~~ / **melted** with the afternoon sun.
- 3) ~~Baseball in the summer~~ / **is** a great family pastime.
- 4) The rocking ~~chair on the porch~~ / **belonged** to my dear Aunt Madeline.
- 5) ~~Along with the rest of the group,~~ **Michelle** / **enjoyed** a dish of chocolate ice cream.
- 6) The ~~spoon from the set of sterling silverware~~ / **fell** behind the china hutch.
- 7) ~~Sand from the beach~~ / **sifted** out of my right shoe and onto the kitchen floor.
- 8) The ~~children from the neighborhood~~ / **filtered** into the school playground before the start of the softball game.
- 9) ~~Backpacks of every size and color~~ / **hung** on pegs in the school hallway.
- 10) The ~~eighteen-wheeler~~ / **drove** out of the truck stop parking lot and onto the highway.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) The beautiful ~~seashells along the seashore~~ / **were** white and sparkling in the sunlight.
- 12) ~~After a long wait,~~ the **family** / finally **opened** the front door of their new home.
- 13) The best ~~part of the book~~ / **is** the ending.
- 14) The brick ~~house on the corner~~ / **has** a built-in pool in the backyard.
- 15) Many **people** / **choose** to eat popcorn with lots of butter at the movies.
- 16) ~~After the rain,~~ the **children** / **ran** to play outside in the puddles on the driveway.
- 17) ~~During breakfast,~~ **we** / **could hear** the birds singing in the trees.
- 18) The big, goose-down ~~pillow~~ / **belonged** on the king-sized bed in my parents' bedroom.
- 19) John's leather **wallet** / **contains** the school pictures of his nieces and nephews.
- 20) The chocolate **candy** with the caramel and nuts / **is** a top-seller for the local candy merchant.



### Subjects and Predicates 3 (Complete & Simple + Prep Phrases)

- Directions:
- Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and the complete predicate each sentence.
  - ~~Cross out~~ *prepositional* phrases.
  - Circle the simple subject and simple predicate.

Example: The English instructor ~~with the beard~~ / wrote "Good Job" ~~on your paragraph writing sample~~.

- 1) My dad brought a new meat thermometer to the family cookout.
- 2) The students in my anatomy class will be watching virtual labs on computers tomorrow.
- 3) Running between parked cars is a very dangerous way to cross the street.
- 4) You should have a good plan for learning as much about grammar as possible.
- 5) Catalogs from clothing distributors seem to come twice each month.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) You should bring the job placement list for the past five years to our next meeting.
- 7) A lack of understanding might have something to do with people's level of caring.
- 8) As a skilled wedding planner, I hope to arrange a beautiful wedding for my clients.
- 9) It is hard to know how to begin the analysis of a sentence.
- 10) The first word in that sentence is a noun.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Your best effort should guide your performance on this worksheet.
- 12) The end of a sentence will never have a comma nor semi-colon.
- 13) Some of the newest workout equipment can be found inside the new fitness center.
- 14) My sister wrote a mysterious ending to her story.
- 15) Students may correct this worksheet by using the answer key.

◆ Check your work.

Subjects and Predicates 3 - KEY  
(Complete & Simple + Prep Phrases)

- Directions: a. Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and the complete predicate each sentence.  
b. ~~Cross out prepositional phrases.~~  
c. Circle the simple subject (ss) and *simple predicate* (sp).

Example: The English instructor ~~with the beard~~ / wrote "Good Job" ~~on your paragraph writing sample.~~

ss                      sp

- 1) My dad / ~~brought~~ a new meat thermometer ~~to the family cookout.~~  
2) The students ~~in my anatomy class~~ / ~~will be watching~~ virtual labs ~~on computers~~ tomorrow.  
3) Running ~~between parked cars~~ / ~~is~~ a very dangerous way to cross the street.  
(to cross = verb infinitive)  
4) You / ~~should have~~ a good plan for ~~learning as much about grammar as possible.~~  
5) Catalogs ~~from clothing distributors~~ / ~~seem~~ to come twice each month. (to come = verb infinitive)  
◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 6) You / ~~should bring~~ the job placement list ~~for the past five years~~ ~~to our next meeting.~~  
7) A lack ~~of understanding~~ / ~~might have~~ something to do ~~with people's level of caring.~~  
(to do = verb infinitive)  
8) ~~As a skilled wedding planner,~~ I / ~~hope~~ to arrange a beautiful wedding ~~for my clients.~~  
(to arrange = verb infinitive)  
9) It / ~~is~~ hard to know how to begin the analysis ~~of a sentence.~~ (to know & to begin = verb infinitives)  
10) The first word ~~in that sentence~~ / ~~is~~ a noun.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Your best effort / ~~should guide~~ your performance ~~on this worksheet.~~  
12) The end ~~of a sentence~~ / ~~will never have~~ a comma nor semi-colon.  
13) Some ~~of the newest workout equipment~~ / ~~can be found~~ ~~inside the new fitness center.~~  
14) My sister / ~~wrote~~ a mysterious ending ~~to her story.~~  
15) Students / ~~may correct~~ this worksheet ~~by using~~ the answer key.

◆ Check your work.

## Subjects and Predicates 1 (Identifying Complete Subjects & Predicates)

- Directions:   **a.** Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and complete predicate in each sentence.  
                  **b.** Underline the complete subject once and the complete predicate twice.

Example:    The dog / ran into the lake.

- 1) Our fish were dancing in the bubbles of the aquarium.
- 2) Sally and Eric went to IHOP for a pancake breakfast.
- 3) The big, brown desk needed to be moved from the corner.
- 4) Two cats climbed up the tree yesterday morning.
- 5) A notebook fell from the counter.
- 6) The bookshelf was sold for ninety dollars in the auction.
- 7) Plush, white carpet ran down the hall and into each of the bedrooms.
- 8) Tuesday was a windy day.
- 9) All of the kites flew high above the trees.
- 10) Our dog took first place in the annual dog show.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Our class went to Bay Beach Sanctuary for the field trip.
- 12) The drawing revealed Greg's talent in art.
- 13) Red curtains hung in the windows of the department store.
- 14) We pulled into the lane of our neighbor's house.
- 15) Painted Lady butterflies are beautiful.
- 16) The spotted horse whinnied in the barn.
- 17) The owl descended to the ground in one swoop.
- 18) Every pair of shoes in the store had style.
- 19) The basket was filled with blueberries.
- 20) We followed the stream on our way to the picnic area.

◆ Check your work.

Subjects and Predicates 1 - KEY  
(Identifying Complete Subjects & Predicates)

Directions: **a.** Draw a line ( / ) between the complete subject and complete predicate in each sentence. **b.** Underline the complete subject once and the complete predicate twice.

Example: The dog / ran into the lake.

- 1) Our fish / were dancing in the bubbles of the aquarium.
  - 2) Sally and Eric / went to IHOP for a pancake breakfast.
  - 3) The big, brown desk / needed to be moved from the corner.
  - 4) Two cats / climbed up the tree yesterday morning.
  - 5) A notebook / fell from the counter.
  - 6) The bookshelf / was sold for ninety dollars in the auction.
  - 7) Plush, white carpet / ran down the hall and into each of the bedrooms.
  - 8) Tuesday / was a windy day.
  - 9) All of the kites / flew high above the trees.
  - 10) Our dog / took first place in the annual dog show.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Our class / went to Bay Beach Sanctuary for the field trip.
  - 12) The drawing / revealed Greg's talent in art.
  - 13) Red curtains / hung in the windows of the department store.
  - 14) We / pulled into the lane of our neighbor's house.
  - 15) Painted Lady butterflies / are beautiful.
  - 16) The spotted horse / whinnied in the barn.
  - 17) The owl / descended to the ground in one swoop.
  - 18) Every pair of shoes in the store / had style.
  - 19) The basket / was filled with blueberries.
  - 20) We / followed the stream on our way to the picnic area.

Subjects and Predicates 4  
(Simple Subject & Predicate – short sentences)

Directions: Draw a line to divide the sentence between the complete subject and complete predicate. Underline the simple subject once and simple predicate twice.

Example: Gia is working hard.                      Gia / is working hard.

- 1) The school is over there.
  - 2) Marcus sings well.
  - 3) Max is going to work.
  - 4) Josie has seen eagles.
  - 5) My mother can cook really well.
  - 6) Felicia loves to eat.
  - 7) His sister lives in Colombia.
  - 8) The author has written a novel.
  - 9) We are going to the park.
  - 10) Filippe asked me to call him.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) It has been hot.
  - 12) Lor arrived early.
  - 13) The children are playing.
  - 14) He might be leaving soon.
  - 15) The dog can run fast.
  - 16) My youngest brother has been given a promotion.
  - 17) The community swimming pool is located on Beach Drive.
  - 18) Dark storm clouds gathered in the western sky.
  - 19) My flip-flops are green with pink polka dots.
  - 20) A dozen eggs can make quite a mess.
- ◆ Check your work.

Subjects and Predicates 4 - KEY  
(Simple Subject & Predicate – short sentences)

Directions: Draw a line to divide the sentence between the complete subject and complete predicate. Underline the simple subject once and simple predicate twice.

Example: Gia is working hard.      Gia / is working hard.

- 1) The school / is over there.
  - 2) Marcus / sings well.
  - 3) Max / is going to work.
  - 4) Josie / has seen eagles.
  - 5) My mother / can cook really well.
  - 6) Felicia / loves to eat.
  - 7) His sister / lives in Colombia.
  - 8) The author / has written a novel.
  - 9) We / are going to the park.
  - 10) Filippe / asked me to call him.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) It / has been hot.
  - 12) Lor / arrived early.
  - 13) The children / are playing.
  - 14) He / might be leaving soon.
  - 15) The dog / can run fast.
  - 16) My youngest brother / has been given a promotion.
  - 17) The community swimming pool / is located on Beach Drive.
  - 18) Dark storm clouds / gathered in the western sky.
  - 19) My flip-flops / are green with pink polka dots.
  - 20) A dozen eggs / can make quite a mess.

◆ Check your work.

Subject/Verb Agreement 1-3  
Mixed Practice

Directions: Underline the correct verb form in each of the sentences.

Example: Each of us ( is, are ) going to the lecture tomorrow.

- 1) Someone ( was, were ) here this morning.
- 2) Neither the books nor the tape ( was, were ) returned.
- 3) One of the flowers, which was pink, ( was, were ) too fragrant.
- 4) (Has, Have) anyone on the committee mailed out the letters?
- 5) The messages, by the way, ( help, helps ) cheer the patient.
- 6) Several of the chains ( was, were ) rusted.
- 7) Each of those colors ( add, adds ) a bright note.
- 8) There ( was, were ) several breaks in the pipe.
- 9) The paint and the brush ( was, were ) on the ladder.
- 10) Either the book or the magazine ( contain, contains ) the quote.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) None of this thread ( ravel, ravel ) .
- 12) When ( was, were ) the car fenders dented?
- 13) Several of these homes ( has, have ) been destroyed in the storm.
- 14) The coaches or the players ( shoot, shoots ) more baskets.
- 15) Neither of these classes ( is, are ) very popular.
- 16) Cement and brick ( have, has ) often been used in building.
- 17) Many (believes, believe) electronics is more important than ever.
- 18) Many of the houses in the suburbs ( is, are ) increasing in size.
- 19) Nobody ( like, likes ) her recipe for fruitcake.
- 20) Either Allen or his friends ( is, are ) coming home for Christmas this week.

◆ Check your work.

Subject/Verb Agreement 1-3  
Mixed Practice - KEY

Directions: Underline the correct verb form in each of the sentences.

Example: Each of us ( is, are ) going to the lecture tomorrow.

- 1) Someone ( was, were ) here this morning. was
- 2) Neither the books nor the tape ( was, were ) returned. was
- 3) One of the flowers, which was pink, ( was, were ) too fragrant. was
- 4) ( Has, Have ) anyone on the committee mailed out the letters? Has
- 5) The messages, by the way, ( helps, help ) cheer the patient. help
- 6) Several of the chains ( was, were ) rusted. were
- 7) Each of those colors ( adds, add ) a bright note. adds
- 8) There ( was, were ) several breaks in the pipe. were
- 9) The paint and the brush ( was, were ) on the ladder. were
- 10) Either the book or the magazine ( contains, contain ) the quote. contains

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) None of this thread ( ravels, ravel ) . ravels
- 12) When ( was, were ) the car fenders dented? were
- 13) Several of these homes ( has, have ) been destroyed in the storm. have
- 14) The coaches or the players ( shoots, shoot ) more baskets. shoot
- 15) Neither of these classes ( is, are ) very popular. is
- 16) Cement and brick ( has, have ) often been used in building. have
- 17) Many ( believes, believe ) electronics is more important than ever. believe
- 18) Many of the houses in the suburbs ( is, are ) increasing in size. are
- 19) Nobody ( likes, like ) her recipe for fruitcake. likes
- 20) Either Allen or his friends ( is, are ) coming home for Christmas this week. are



## Subject-Verb Agreement 1 - 1

Directions: Underline the form of the verb that correctly matches with the subject.

Example: The plane's engine (roars, roar) overhead.

- 1) Eric (want, wants) to go with us to the mall.
  - 2) The students and the teacher (arrive, arrives) at the performance at the same time.
  - 3) Amanda (enjoy, enjoys) going to the theater.
  - 4) Barry and she (live, lives) close to the amusement park.
  - 5) Our neighbors (park, parks) their cars across the street.
  - 6) He (practice, practices) his violin every day after dinner.
  - 7) Stacey and her mother (have, has) the same color hair.
  - 8) The cafeteria (close, closes) at 8:00 p.m.
  - 9) Coffee (taste, tastes) really good on a cold winter morning.
  - 10) Bob and his wife (take, takes) a vacation to Canada every summer.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) She and her neighbor (like, likes) to walk every morning before work.
  - 12) The wind (cause, causes) the windows to rattle.
  - 13) You and I (is, are) here to improve our grammar skills.
  - 14) The children (like, likes) camping in their backyard.
  - 15) He (make, makes) the best cake I have ever eaten.
  - 16) The computer (has, have) new software on it.
  - 17) I (see, sees) the new building on Main Street.
  - 18) The boy and his mother (watch, watches) the television show together.
  - 19) My cousin (call, calls) my aunt every day at 9:00 a.m.
  - 20) Anthony and she (play, plays) the piano beautifully.

◆ Check your work.

## Subject-Verb Agreement 1-1 – KEY

Directions: Underline the form of the verb that correctly matches with the subject.

Example: The plane's engine (roars, roar) overhead.

- 1) Eric (want, wants) to go with us to the mall.
  - 2) The students and the teacher (arrive, arrives) at the performance at the same time.
  - 3) Amanda (enjoy, enjoys) going to the theater.
  - 4) Barry and she (live, lives) close to the amusement park.
  - 5) Our neighbors (park, parks) their cars across the street.
  - 6) He (practice, practices) his violin every day after dinner.
  - 7) Stacey and her mother (have, has) the same color hair.
  - 8) The cafeteria (close, closes) at 8:00 p.m.
  - 9) Coffee (taste, tastes) really good on a cold winter morning.
  - 10) Bob and his wife (take, takes) a vacation to Canada every summer.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) She and her neighbor (like, likes) to walk every morning before work.
  - 12) The wind (cause, causes) the windows to rattle.
  - 13) You and I (is, are) here to improve our grammar skills.
  - 14) The children (like, likes) camping in their backyard.
  - 15) He (make, makes) the best cake I have ever eaten.
  - 16) The computer (has, have) new software on it.
  - 17) I (see, sees) the new building on Main Street.
  - 18) The boy and his mother (watch, watches) the television show together.
  - 19) My cousin (call, calls) my aunt every day at 9:00 a.m.
  - 20) Anthony and she (play, plays) the piano beautifully.

## Subject-Verb Agreement 1 - 2

Directions: Write the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

Example: Jason and Tess come with us to the concert. (come)

- 1) Bob and she \_\_\_\_\_ in the apartment near the river. (live)
- 2) Lauren \_\_\_\_\_ she can come to the movie with us on Saturday. (think)
- 3) We \_\_\_\_\_ to the park every Sunday. (go)
- 4) That man \_\_\_\_\_ the new owner of the coffee shop. (be)
- 5) He \_\_\_\_\_ long hours every day. (work)
- 6) The students \_\_\_\_\_ their lunches in the cafeteria. (buy)
- 7) The baby \_\_\_\_\_ across the living room floor. (crawl)
- 8) Terry and his sister \_\_\_\_\_ to school on their bikes. (ride)
- 9) People \_\_\_\_\_ me by my nickname, Red. (know)
- 10) The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ every time I am in the shower. (ring)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: ~~Cross out~~ the prepositional phrases and correct any verb errors.

Some sentences may be correct, so write Correct after those sentences.

Example: The trees <sup>are</sup> ~~in the forest~~ **is** bending low ~~in the storm~~.

- 11) The flowers in our garden grows very fast.
- 12) My aunt and uncle from Texas visits us every summer at our cottage.
- 13) The car with the new tires is ready to be picked up at the service station.
- 14) The books on the shelf needs to be reorganized.
- 15) The sidewalk between the buildings have been replaced several times.
- 16) The workers in the factory uses safety glasses to protect their eyes from sparks.
- 17) Our trip to the Bahamas start on Friday.
- 18) The river by the woods runs very fast in the spring.
- 19) The children at the playground enjoys the new equipment.
- 20) The intersection of the two highways are blocked by the heavy traffic.

## Subject-Verb Agreement 1 - 2

Directions: Write the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

Example: Jason and Tess come with us to the concert. (come)

- 1) Bob and she live in the apartment near the river. (live)
- 2) Lauren thinks she can come to the movie with us on Saturday. (think)
- 3) We go to the park every Sunday. (go)
- 4) That man is the new owner of the coffee shop. (be)
- 5) He works long hours every day. (work)
- 6) The students buy their lunches in the cafeteria. (buy)
- 7) The baby crawls across the living room floor. (crawl)
- 8) Terry and his sister ride to school on their bikes. (ride)
- 9) People know me by my nickname, Red. (know)
- 10) The telephone rings every time I am in the shower. (ring)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: ~~Cross out~~ the prepositional phrases and correct any verb errors.

Some sentences may be correct, so write Correct after those sentences.

Example: The trees ~~in the forest~~ <sup>are</sup> ~~is~~ bending low ~~in the storm~~.

- 11) The flowers ~~in our garden~~ **grow** very fast.
- 12) My aunt and uncle ~~from Texas~~ **visit** us every summer ~~at our cottage~~.
- 13) The car ~~with the new tires~~ is ready to be picked up ~~at the service station~~. **(Correct)**
- 14) The books ~~on the shelf~~ **need** to be reorganized.
- 15) The sidewalk ~~between the buildings~~ **has** been replaced several times.
- 16) The workers ~~in the factory~~ **use** safety glasses to protect their eyes ~~from sparks~~.
- 17) Our trip ~~to the Bahamas~~ **starts** ~~on Friday~~.
- 18) The river ~~by the woods~~ runs very fast ~~in the spring~~. **(Correct)**
- 19) The children ~~at the playground~~ **enjoy** the new equipment.
- 20) The intersection ~~of the two highways~~ **is** blocked ~~by the heavy traffic~~.

### Subject-Verb Agreement 1-4: Mixed Practice

- Directions:
- Underline the subject of each sentence.
  - Tell whether the subject is singular (s) or plural (p).
  - Underline the verb that correctly matches the subject.

P

Example: Two roads (converges, converge) at the lights.

- Darnell and I (meets, meet) for lunch on Fridays.
  - A map of parks (shows, show) the one closest to home.
  - Everyone (needs, need) to sit down.
  - Josie (has seen, have seen) a red squirrel.
  - Either of the pies (looks, look) wonderful.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- Several on the team (wears, wear) baseball caps.
  - All of the yard (is, are) covered with leaves.
  - No one in my group (knows, know) the answer to the problem.
  - Half of the groceries (is, are) put away.
  - Any of the cookies (look, looks) delicious.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct verb in the present tense.

- Neither the doctor nor the nurse \_\_\_\_\_ my call. (to return)
- Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ here. (to be)
- Some of the project \_\_\_\_\_ interesting. (to sound)
- None of us \_\_\_\_\_ thinking of saying that. (to be)
- Each of my sisters \_\_\_\_\_ two children. (to have)
- Not only the men but also Tia \_\_\_\_\_ to come to the game. (to plan)
- Two-thirds of the cake \_\_\_\_\_ to be missing. (to seem)

◆ Check your work.

### Subject-Verb Agreement 1-4: Mixed Practice - KEY

- Directions:
- Underline the subject of each sentence.
  - Tell whether the subject is singular (s) or plural (p).
  - Underline the verb that correctly matches the subject.

Example:  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \text{Two } \underline{\text{roads}} & (\text{converges, } \underline{\text{converge}}) & \text{at the lights.} \end{matrix}$

- 1)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Darnell}} & \text{and } \underline{\text{I}} & (\text{meets, } \underline{\text{meet}}) & \text{for lunch on Fridays.} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 2)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{A map}} & \text{of parks} & (\underline{\text{shows}}, \text{ show}) & \text{the one closest to home.} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 3)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Everyone}} & (\underline{\text{needs}}, \text{ need}) & \text{to sit down.} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 4)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Josie}} & (\text{has seen, } \underline{\text{have seen}}) & \text{a red squirrel.} \end{matrix}$   
S (This indefinite pronoun is ALWAYS singular when used with "of.")
- 5)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Either}} & \text{of the pies} & (\underline{\text{looks}}, \text{ look}) & \text{wonderful.} \end{matrix}$

Hint: Singular verbs are often spelled with "s."

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Several}} & \text{on the team} & (\text{wears, } \underline{\text{wear}}) & \text{baseball caps.} \end{matrix}$   
S (singular object of preposition – yard)
- 7)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{All}} & \text{of the yard} & (\underline{\text{is}}, \text{ are}) & \text{covered with leaves.} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 8)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{No one}} & \text{in my group} & (\underline{\text{knows}}, \text{ know}) & \text{the answer to the problem.} \end{matrix}$   
P (plural object of preposition – groceries)
- 9)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Half}} & \text{of the groceries} & (\underline{\text{is}}, \text{ are}) & \text{put away.} \end{matrix}$   
P (plural object of preposition – cookies)
- 10)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Any}} & \text{of the cookies} & (\text{looks, } \underline{\text{look}}) & \text{delicious.} \end{matrix}$

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: Fill in the blank with the correct verb in the present tense.

- 11)  $\begin{matrix} & & S \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Neither the doctor nor the nurse}} & \underline{\text{returns}} & \text{my call. (to return)} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 12)  $\begin{matrix} & & S \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Everybody}} & \underline{\text{is}} & \text{here. (to be)} \end{matrix}$   
S (singular object of preposition – project)
- 13)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Some}} & \text{of the project} & \underline{\text{sounds}} & \text{interesting. (to sound)} \end{matrix}$   
P (plural object of preposition – us)
- 14)  $\begin{matrix} & & P \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{None}} & \text{of us} & \underline{\text{are}} & \text{thinking of saying that. (to be)} \end{matrix}$   
P (This indefinite pronoun can be either singular or plural. The object of the preposition "us" is plural, so NONE is plural in this sentence. Use a plural verb.)
- 15)  $\begin{matrix} & & S \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Each}} & \text{of my sisters} & \underline{\text{has}} & \text{two children. (to have)} \end{matrix}$   
S
- 16)  $\begin{matrix} & & S \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Not only the men but also Tia}} & \underline{\text{plans}} & \text{to come to the game. (to plan)} \end{matrix}$   
S (singular object of preposition – cake)
- 17)  $\begin{matrix} & & S \\ & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \underline{\text{Two-thirds}} & \text{of the cake} & \underline{\text{seems}} & \text{to be missing. (to seem)} \end{matrix}$

## Subject-Verb Agreement 2 - 1

Directions: Underline the correct verb form.

Example: Twenty dollars (is/are) too much to pay for that shirt.

- 1) My favorite pair of jeans (feel/feels) the most comfortable.
  - 2) Two pints (equal>equals) one quart.
  - 3) Where (is/are) my keys?
  - 4) The band (perform/performs) in the new concert hall.
  - 5) Athletics (build/builds) strong teamwork.
  - 6) Mike, together with his sister, (like/likes) listening to country music.
  - 7) Five days (go/goes) by fast when you are on a vacation.
  - 8) Dan's family (travel, travels) to Canada to go fishing.
  - 9) Good news (come/comes) in surprising ways.
  - 10) Here (is/are) my keys and my wallet.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Four hours (seem/seems) like a long time to wait for the repairs.
  - 12) Her sunglasses (need/needs) to be repaired.
  - 13) The teacher, in addition to the students, (was/were) surprised by the fire alarm.
  - 14) Why (do/does) some birds fly south in the winter?
  - 15) The company (hold/holds) its annual meeting in the spring.
  - 16) Forty miles (is/are) a long way to ride a bike.
  - 17) Here (is/are) the scissors I borrowed.
  - 18) Those shorts (come/comes) in many different colors.
  - 19) There (is/are) the tent and the sleeping bags.
  - 20) Economics (is/are) an interesting class to take.
- ◆ Check your work.

## Subject-Verb Agreement 2 - 1 - KEY

Directions: Underline the correct verb form.

Example: Twenty dollars (is/are) too much to pay for that shirt.

- 1) My favorite pair of jeans (feel/feels) the most comfortable.
  - 2) Two pints (equal/equals) one quart.
  - 3) Where (is/are) my keys?
  - 4) The band (perform/performs) in the new concert hall.
  - 5) Athletics (build/builds) strong teamwork.
  - 6) Mike, together with his sister, (like/likes) listening to country music.
  - 7) Five days (go/goes) by fast when you are on a vacation.
  - 8) Dan's family (travel, travels) to Canada to go fishing.
  - 9) Good news (come/comes) in surprising ways.
  - 10) Here (is/are) my keys and my wallet.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Four hours (seem/seems) like a long time to wait for the repairs.
  - 12) Her sunglasses (need/needs) to be repaired.
  - 13) The teacher, in addition to the students, (was/were) surprised by the fire alarm.
  - 14) Why (do/does) some birds fly south in the winter?
  - 15) The company (hold/holds) its annual meeting in the spring.
  - 16) Forty miles (is/are) a long way to ride a bike.
  - 17) Here (is/are) the scissors I borrowed.
  - 18) Those shorts (come/comes) in many different colors.
  - 19) There (is/are) the tent and the sleeping bags.
  - 20) Economics (is/are) an interesting class to take.
- ◆ Check your work.



## Subject-Verb Agreement 2 - 2

Directions: Correct any errors in the verb form. If the sentence is correct, write Correct after the sentence.

Example:	My sister, along with her children, <del>visit</del> <sup>visits</sup> our cousin's farm every year.
----------	--

- 1) The group of students meet on Thursdays at noon to study together.
- 2) My new jeans is in the washer.
- 3) Here's the books you requested.
- 4) My pair of sunglasses is in my purse.
- 5) Fifty dollars are too much for that coat.
- 6) Checkers are a fun game to play.
- 7) His company pay for his business trips.
- 8) The United States have many beautiful parks.
- 9) Where is the scissors and the tape?
- 10) When does the games begin?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Two teaspoons are what the doctor prescribed.
- 12) When are the couple taking a vacation?
- 13) The pliers are not in the tool box.
- 14) The doctor, together with his staff, work on Saturday mornings.
- 15) Mathematics are challenging for some people.
- 16) Where is the dog and the cat?
- 17) Fifty minutes is the length of each class period.
- 18) That pair of pants seem too short for me.
- 19) Our family like to celebrate the holidays together.
- 20) Where's the new bookcase and the desk going to fit in that room?

◆ Check your work.

## Subject-Verb Agreement 2 - 2

Directions: Correct any errors in the verb form. If the sentence is correct, write Correct after the sentence.

Example:	My sister, along with her children, <del>visit</del> <sup>visits</sup> our cousin's farm every year.
----------	--

- 1) The group of students ~~meet~~ on Thursdays at noon to study together. **meets**
  - 2) My new jeans ~~is~~ in the washer. **are**
  - 3) Here's the books you requested. **are**
  - 4) My pair of sunglasses ~~is~~ in my purse. **(Correct)**
  - 5) Fifty dollars ~~are~~ too much for that coat. **is**
  - 6) Checkers ~~are~~ a fun game to play. **is**
  - 7) His company ~~pay~~ for his business trips. **pays**
  - 8) The United States ~~have~~ many beautiful parks. **has**
  - 9) Where ~~is~~ the scissors and the tape? **are**
  - 10) When ~~does~~ the games begin? **do**
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Two teaspoons ~~are~~ what the doctor prescribed. **is**
  - 12) When ~~are~~ the couple taking a vacation? **is**
  - 13) The pliers ~~are~~ not in the tool box. **(Correct)**
  - 14) The doctor, together with his staff, ~~work~~ on Saturday mornings. **works**
  - 15) Mathematics ~~are~~ challenging for some people. **is**
  - 16) Where ~~is~~ the dog and the cat? **are**
  - 17) Fifty minutes ~~is~~ the length of each class period. **(Correct)**
  - 18) That pair of pants ~~seem~~ too short for me. **seems**
  - 19) Our family ~~like~~ to celebrate the holidays together. **likes**
  - 20) Where's the new bookcase and the desk going to fit in that room? **are**

### Subject/Verb Agreement 2-3

Directions: Write the correct present tense verb form to complete each sentence.

Example: There _____ many teams in the NFL. (be)
There <u>are</u> many teams in the NFL. (be)

- 1) Six inches \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of snow. (be)
- 2) The boys, along with their dogs, \_\_\_\_\_ lost in the woods. (get)
- 3) The pair of geese \_\_\_\_\_ flying south. (be)
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ the skirt and sweater a matching set? (be)
- 5) Some of the cake \_\_\_\_\_ left on the plate. (be)
- 6) Mumps \_\_\_\_\_ a dreaded disease. (be)
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ the rice and the fish taste good? (do)
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ you late again? (be)
- 9) The two-inch nails \_\_\_\_\_ best with wood. (work)
- 10) The pots, as well as the pan, \_\_\_\_\_ different lids. (has)

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Ten hours \_\_\_\_\_ a long time to wait at the airport. (be)
- 12) A movie and a talk show \_\_\_\_\_ on TV after the news. (be)
- 13) Athletics \_\_\_\_\_ people in good shape. (keep)
- 14) The small pair of scissors \_\_\_\_\_ in the drawer. (be)
- 15) A long cable \_\_\_\_\_ on the field near the glider. (lie)
- 16) Butter and sugar \_\_\_\_\_ good on warm bread. (taste)
- 17) Where \_\_\_\_\_ the washer and dryer in your house? (be)
- 18) Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ the game tic-tac-toe. (play)
- 19) Sixty percent of the people \_\_\_\_\_ never going to get rich. (be)
- 20) Neither of my daughters \_\_\_\_\_ much spare time. (has)

◆ Check your work.

## Subject/Verb Agreement 2-3 KEY

Directions: Write the correct present tense verb form to complete each sentence.  
(The subject of each sentence is identified in this answer key.)

Example:	There _____ many teams in the NFL. (be)
	There <u>are</u> many teams in the NFL. (be)

- 1) Six inches is a lot of snow. (be)
  - 2) The boys, along with their dogs, get lost in the woods. (get)
  - 3) The pair of geese is flying south. (be)
  - 4) Are the skirt and sweater a matching set? (be)
  - 5) Some (of the cake) is left on the plate. (be)
  - 6) Mumps is a dreaded disease. (be)
  - 7) Do the rice and the fish taste good? (do)
  - 8) Are you late again? (be)
  - 9) The two-inch nails work best with wood. (work)
  - 10) The pots, as well as the pans, have different lids. (has)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Ten hours is a long time to wait at the airport. (be)
  - 12) A movie and a talk show are on TV after the news. (be)
  - 13) Athletics keeps people in good shape. (keep)
  - 14) The small pair of scissors is in the drawer. (be)
  - 15) A long cable lies on the field near the glider. (lie)
  - 16) Butter and sugar taste good on warm bread. (taste)
  - 17) Where are the washer and dryer in your house? (be)
  - 18) Everybody plays the game tic-tac-toe. (play)
  - 19) Sixty percent (of the people) are never going to get rich. (be)
  - 20) Neither of my daughters has much spare time. (has)

Unclear Pronoun Reference  
(Pronouns 6)

Directions: Make changes in these sentences to make the meaning clear.

Example:	Unclear:	<i>They</i> say snow is coming. (Who is “they”?)
	Better:	<u>The forecaster</u> says snow is coming.

1) Marcus told his brother that he thought he had lost weight.

---

2) On the billboard it says that Happy Feet is coming soon.

---

3) At the PAC they said that the play was all sold out.

---

4) You can tell Frank or Lor that his shirt is done.

---

5) They said that the store would be opening on Friday.

---

6) She put the cookies on a plate and then put more in the oven.

---

7) He put his gun on the ground and then shot it.

---

8) If you have too much work in your office, you should share it with your co-workers.

---

9) The student told her teacher that she was having a bad day.

---

10) I bought a new dress at the shop. I really like it.

---

◆ Check your answers with the sample answers in the Answer Key.  
(If you have questions about your answers, ask an instructor.)

Unclear Pronoun Reference – KEY  
(Pronouns 6)

Directions: Make changes in these sentences to make the meaning clear.

Example: Unclear: *They* say snow is coming. (Who is “they”?)  
Better: The forecaster says snow is coming.

\*Your answers may vary from these and may still be correct.

- 1) Marcus told his brother that he thought he had lost weight. (vague *he*)  
Marcus told his brother that *Marcus* thought *his brother* had lost weight.  
Marcus thought his brother had lost weight.  
Marcus said to his brother, “You look like you have lost weight.”
- 2) On the movie billboard it says that Happy Feet is coming soon. (repetition)  
The movie billboard says that Happy Feet is coming soon.
- 3) At the PAC they said that the play was all sold out. (repetition)  
The PAC said that the play was all sold out.  
The PAC said that *The Lion King* was all sold out.
- 4) You can tell Frank or Lor that his shirt is ready at the cleaners. (unclear *his*)  
You can tell Frank or Lor that Frank’s shirt is ready at the cleaners.  
You can tell Frank or Lor that Lor’s shirt is ready at the cleaners.  
Tell Frank his shirt is ready at the cleaners.
- 5) They said that the store would be opening on Friday. (vague *they*)  
The newspaper advertisement said that the store would be opening on Friday.  
The manager said . . . .
- 6) She put some cookies on plates and then put more in the oven. (vague - *more what?*)  
She put some cookies on plates and then put more cookies in the oven to bake.
- 7) He put his gun on the ground and then shot it. (vague *it – shot what?*)  
He put his gun on the ground and then shot the ground.  
He put his gun on the ground and then shot the gun.  
He shot the gun and then put it on the ground.
- 8) If you have too much work in your office, you should share it with your co-workers. (*it?*)  
If you have too much work in your office, you should share the work with your co-workers.  
If you have too much work in your office, you should share your office . . .
- 9) The student told her teacher that she was having a bad day. (vague *she*)  
The student told her teacher that the student was having a bad day.  
The student said she was having a bad day.  
The student told her teacher, “You’re having a bad day.”
- 10) I bought a new dress at that shop. I really like it. (vague *it – shop? or dress?*)  
I bought a new dress at that shop. I really like the dress.  
I bought a new dress at that shop. I really like the shop.  
I bought a new dress that I really like at that shop.

WORD USAGE 1-1  
Lie/Lay, Sit/Set, Raise/Rise

Directions: Choose the correct verb form in the following sentences.

Example: The temperature has (raised, risen) twenty degrees today.

- 1) My cat (lies, lays) on the couch every night.
- 2) Please don't (sit, set) your wet towel on the bed.
- 3) Donna (raised, rose) early to make breakfast for us.
- 4) He has (laid, lain) in bed for the past two days because of his illness.
- 5) Why can't we (sit, set) in the last row of chairs?
- 6) The boxes (lay, lain, laid) on the floor until Mike picked them up.
- 7) Costs have (rose, raised, risen) for books this year.
- 8) Monique (sit, sat, set) her suitcase on the cart.
- 9) (Raise, Rise, Risen) the window if you are too warm.
- 10) Your keys (lie, lain, laid) over there on the counter.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) After the last song, the audience (rose, raised, rised) to their feet to applaud the performers.
- 12) The children (sat, set, sits) quietly waiting for their parents to arrive.
- 13) You have (lain, laid, lay) in the sun too long.
- 14) We will (rise, raise, rose) early tomorrow to leave on our vacation.
- 15) Her jacket is (laying, lying, lain) on the chair by the window.
- 16) You can (sit, set, sat) your gift by the others.
- 17) Nina does not know where she (lain, laid, lie) her purse.
- 18) The stores have (raised, risen, rose) the prices due to the shortages.
- 19) We have (lay, lain, laid) our project aside to help them with theirs.
- 20) Yesterday, we were told to (rise, rose, raise) the flag to half-staff.
- ◆ Check your work.

WORD USAGE 1-1 KEY  
Lie/Lay, Sit/Set, Raise/Rise

Directions: Choose the correct verb form in the following sentences.

Example: The temperature has (raised, risen) twenty degrees today.

- 1) My cat (lies, lays) on the couch every night.
  - 2) Please don't (sit, set) your wet towel on the bed.
  - 3) Donna (raised, rose) early to make breakfast for us.
  - 4) He has (laid, lain) in bed for the past two days because of his illness.
  - 5) Why can't we (sit, set) in the last row of chairs?
  - 6) The boxes (lay, lain, laid) on the floor until Mike picked them up.
  - 7) Costs have (rose, raised, risen) for books this year.
  - 8) Monique (sit, sat, set) her suitcase on the cart.
  - 9) (Raise, Rise, Risen) the window if you are too warm.
  - 10) Your keys (lie, lain, laid) over there on the counter.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) After the last song, the audience (rose, raised, rised) to their feet to applaud the performers.
  - 12) The children (sat, set, sits) quietly waiting for their parents to arrive.
  - 13) You have (lain, laid, lay) in the sun too long.
  - 14) We will (rise, raise, rose) early tomorrow to leave on our vacation.
  - 15) Her jacket is (laying, lying, lain) on the chair by the window.
  - 16) You can (sit, set, sat) your gift by the others.
  - 17) Nina does not know where she (lain, laid, lie) her purse.
  - 18) The stores have (raised, risen, rose) the prices due to the shortages.
  - 19) We have (lay, lain, laid) our project aside to help them with theirs.
  - 20) Yesterday, we were told to (rise, rose, raise) the flag to half-staff.



Word Usage 1-2

Directions: Fill in the sentences with the correct word from the list below.

Accept / Except

Affect / Effect

Bring / Take

Can / May

Among / Between

Example: Please accept my sincere apology for my rude behavior.  
Sometimes it is difficult to tell the difference between friends and enemies.

- 1) Those charities will gratefully \_\_\_\_\_ any donation one cares to give.
- 2) You will need to \_\_\_\_\_ me home with you after the game.
- 3) The medicine I am taking really \_\_\_\_\_ my appetite.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ I add more vanilla to the batter without ruining the cookies?
- 5) Everyone I know loved the movie \_\_\_\_\_ for my aunt.
- 6) The road \_\_\_\_\_ my house and his was closed due to construction.
- 7) Seattle was \_\_\_\_\_ the top ten cities listed for a high quality of living.
- 8) Sasha will often \_\_\_\_\_ her dog when she runs to the store.
- 9) The skin cream had a marvelous \_\_\_\_\_ on her complexion.
- 10) We \_\_\_\_\_ need to leave early because of the snowstorm.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Kim added more color to her garden by placing marigolds \_\_\_\_\_ the other flowers.
- 12) When you are done in the kitchen can you \_\_\_\_\_ me a soda?
- 13) You \_\_\_\_\_ not leave the house until after you finish your homework.
- 14) The loud music coming from next door will \_\_\_\_\_ my ability to sleep.
- 15) Aaron loved all of the cookies \_\_\_\_\_ for the ones with raisins.
- 16) Children often have an exhausting \_\_\_\_\_ on their parents.
- 17) I know that you \_\_\_\_\_ get the job if your interview goes well.
- 18) Given a choice \_\_\_\_\_ home and the restaurant, I'd rather go out to eat.
- 19) Many people refuse to \_\_\_\_\_ that they are growing old.
- 20) You need to \_\_\_\_\_ Ben to the doctor tomorrow for a checkup.

◆ Check your work.

### Word Usage 1-2 Key

Directions: Fill in the sentences with the correct word from the list below.

Accept / Except

Affect / Effect

Bring / Take

Can / May

Among / Between

Example: Please accept my sincere apology for my rude behavior.  
Sometimes it is difficult to tell the difference between friends and enemies.

- 1) Those charities will gratefully accept any donation one cares to give.
- 2) You will need to bring me home with you after the game.
- 3) The medicine I am taking really affects my appetite.
- 4) Can I add more vanilla to the batter without ruining the cookies?
- 5) Everyone I know loved the movie except for my aunt.
- 6) The road between my house and his was closed due to construction.
- 7) Seattle was among the top ten cities listed for a high quality of living.
- 8) Sasha will often take her dog when she runs to the store.
- 9) The skin cream had a marvelous effect on her complexion.
- 10) We may need to leave early because of the snowstorm.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Kim added more color to her garden by placing marigolds among the other flowers.
- 12) When you are done in the kitchen can you bring me a soda?
- 13) You may not leave the house until after you finish your homework.
- 14) The loud music coming from next door will affect my ability to sleep.
- 15) Aaron loved all of the cookies except for the ones with raisins.
- 16) Children often have an exhausting effect on their parents.
- 17) I know that you can get the job if your interview goes well.
- 18) Given a choice between home and the restaurant, I'd rather go out to eat.
- 19) Many people refuse to accept that they are growing old.
- 20) You need to take Ben to the doctor tomorrow for a checkup.

Usage 1-3 Mixed Practice

(Lay/lie, Sit/set, Raise/rise, Sit/set, Can/may, affect/effect, accept/except, Between/among)

Directions: Underline the correct word(s) each sentence.

Example: Don doesn't know where he (lay, laid) his keys.

- 1) If the dog (lays, lies) on the floor, please (lay, lie) a blanket down first.
- 2) Please (set, sit) the package on the table where I (set, sit).
- 3) The audience (raised, rose) while the curtain was (raising, rising).
- 4) My friend told me not to (bring, take) the monkey to school.
- 5) Most stores (accept, except) MasterCard.
- 6) The host was (among, between) the many guests.
- 7) (Can, May) I go on a campus tour?
- 8) The (affect, effect) of the accident won't (affect, effect) my attitude.
- 9) (Can, May) you pick up the groceries?
- 10) Mary (laid, lay) in bed at night wondering if she (had laid, had lain) the report on the desk.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) If I can (bring, take) the car to work, I'll (bring, take) the project along.
- 12) We are concerned how global warming will (affect, effect) our planet.
- 13) Johnny can't (accept, except) that he needs to (lay, lie) down.
- 14) (Between, Among) the four friends, not one could (bring, take) the soda to the picnic.
- 15) Please (set, sit) down while I (lay, lie) the plates on the table.
- 16) The moon (was raising, was rising) in the eastern sky.
- 17) The (affect, effect) of the decision was difficult to (accept, except).
- 18) We need to (set, sit) in the shade in order to avoid the (affects, effects) of the sun.
- 19) Jean (is laying, is lying) in the other room before (setting, sitting) on the chair.
- 20) (Can, May) the door be left open until I (bring, take) the suitcases in the house?

◆ Check your work.

Usage 1-3 Mixed Practice

Directions: Underline the correct word(s) each sentence.

Example: Don doesn't know where he (lay, laid) his keys.

- 1) If the dog (lays, lies) on the floor, please (lay, lie) a blanket down first.
- 2) Please (set, sit) the package on the table where I (set, sit).
- 3) The audience (raised, rose) while the curtain was (raising, rising).
- 4) My friend told me not to (bring, take) the monkey to school.
- 5) Most stores (accept, except) MasterCard.
- 6) The host was (among, between) the many guests.
- 7) (Can, May) I go on a campus tour?
- 8) The (affect, effect) of the accident won't (affect, effect) my attitude.
- 9) (Can, May) you pick up the groceries?
- 10) Mary (laid, lay) in bed at night wondering if she (had laid, had lain) the report on the desk.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) If I can (bring, take) the car to work, I'll (bring, take) the project along.
- 12) We are concerned how global warming will (affect, effect) our planet.
- 13) Johnny can't (accept, except) that he needs to (lay, lie) down.
- 14) (Between, Among) the four friends, not one could (bring, take) the soda to the picnic.
- 15) Please (set, sit) down while I (lay, lie) the plates on the table.
- 16) The moon (was raising, was rising) in the eastern sky.
- 17) The (affect, effect) of the decision was difficult to (accept, except).
- 18) We need to (set, sit) in the shade in order to avoid the (affects, effects) of the sun.
- 19) Jean (is laying, is lying) in the other room before (setting, sitting) on the chair.
- 20) (Can, May) the door be left open until I (bring, take) the suitcases in the house?

Usage 1 - 4

Affect ( verb ) – to change or influence

Effect ( noun ) – *the* result, outcome, consequence

Use either affect or effect in the following sentences.

- 1) The hurricane had **a** great \_\_\_\_\_ on the economy.
- 2) Snow can really \_\_\_\_\_ how people drive.
- 3) What \_\_\_\_\_ do you think your actions had on her?
- 4) The poem deeply \_\_\_\_\_ my mood.
- 5) Parents sometimes think they don't have **an** \_\_\_\_\_ on their children.
- 6) The heat of summer \_\_\_\_\_ how many people go to the pool.
- 7) Manuel's input \_\_\_\_\_ how I viewed the idea of immigration.
- 8) All that pepper and spice will \_\_\_\_\_ how many customers buy that entrée.
- 9) That medicine may \_\_\_\_\_ your appetite.
- 10) The \_\_\_\_\_ of too much sun on your face is wrinkles.

Accept (verb) – to receive or take willingly, to approve of or give consent

Except (conjunction) – only, but or (preposition) – other than, excluding

Use either accept or except in the following sentences.

- 1) Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ the verdict.
- 2) The students were all finished \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 3) I \_\_\_\_\_ your apology.
- 4) Mario will \_\_\_\_\_ the proposal \_\_\_\_\_ he needs some time to review its contents.
- 5) Helena doesn't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ a compliment.
- 6) All the work is finished \_\_\_\_\_ the vacuuming.
- 7) Please \_\_\_\_\_ this token of my appreciation.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ for Petros, we are all here for the meeting.
- 9) I like all kinds of fruit \_\_\_\_\_ mangos.
- 10) Everyone, \_\_\_\_\_ Harvey, has \_\_\_\_\_ the invitation to the Bests' New Year's Eve party.

Usage 1 - 4

Affect ( verb ) – to change or influence

Effect ( noun ) – *the* result, outcome, consequence

Use either affect or effect in the following sentences.

- 1) The hurricane had a great effect on the economy.
- 2) Snow can really affect how people drive.
- 3) What effect do you think your actions had on her?
- 4) The poem deeply affects my mood.
- 5) Parents sometimes think they don't have **an** effect on their children.
- 6) The heat of summer affects how many people go to the pool.
- 7) Manuel's input affected how I viewed the idea of immigration.
- 8) All that pepper and spice will affect how many customers buy that entrée.
- 9) That medicine may affect your appetite.
- 10) The effect of too much sun on your face is wrinkles.

Accept (verb) – to receive or take willingly, to approve of or give consent

Except (conjunction) – only, but or (preposition) – other than, excluding

Use either accept or except in the following sentences.

- 1) Everyone accepts the verdict.
- 2) The students were all finished except her.
- 3) I accept your apology.
- 4) Mario will accept the proposal except he needs some time to review its contents.
- 5) Helena doesn't know how to accept a compliment.
- 6) All the work is finished except the vacuuming.
- 7) Please accept this token of my appreciation.
- 8) Except for Petros, we are all here for the meeting.
- 9) I like all kinds of fruit except mangos.
- 10) Everyone, except Harvey, has accepted the invitation to the Bests' New Year's Eve party.

Usage 2-1

Directions: Underline the correct word to complete each sentence.

farther/further	loose/lose/loss	quiet/quite	than/then
fewer/less	have/of	lend/borrow/loan	their/there/they're
use/used			

- 1) The children keep asking how much ( further, farther) we have to go.
- 2) Mary is trying to pull her ( lose, loose) tooth out.
- 3) People need to be ( quite, quiet) in the theater!
- 4) Nothing could be ( farther, further) from the truth.
- 5) Emmanuel enjoys steak much more ( then, than) chicken.
- 6) There are ( less, fewer) than eight unbroken eggs in this carton.
- 7) Her mother told her to be sure not to ( loose, loss, lose) her lunch money.
- 8) Finish your projects and (than, then) take a break.
- 9) Neighbors have seen ( quiet, quite) a few deer in the ravine.
- 10) Edward was at a ( lose, loss) for words when asked about making a commitment.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) May I please ( loan, borrow, lend) your book?
- 12) The cafeteria is over ( their, there) near the bookstore.
- 13) Of what ( use, used) are those old windows?
- 14) Maria asked her parents to ( loan, lend) her money for a new car..
- 15) You should ( of, have) called before you came.
- 16) Everyone says (their, they're, there) the best in the business.
- 17) I would be happy to ( loan, lend, borrow) you my copy.
- 18) Please don't go any ( further, farther) until you have checked your work.
- 19)With the addition of a second job, I now have ( less, fewer) hours for recreation.
- 20) I have more (then, than) enough leftovers for dinner tomorrow night.

◆ Check your work.

Usage 2-1 KEY

Directions: Underline the correct word to complete each sentence.

farther/further	loose/lose/loss	quiet/quite	than/then
fewer/less	have/of	lend/borrow/loan	their/there/they're
use/used			

- 1) The children keep asking how much ( further, farther) we have to go.
- 2) Mary is trying to pull her ( lose, loose) tooth out.
- 3) People need to be ( quite, quiet) in the theater!
- 4) Nothing could be ( farther, further) from the truth.
- 5) Emmanuel enjoys steak much more ( then, than) chicken.
- 6) There are ( less, fewer) than eight unbroken eggs in this carton.
- 7) Her mother told her to be sure not to ( loose, loss, lose) her lunch money.
- 8) Finish your projects and (than, then) take a break.
- 9) Neighbors have seen ( quiet, quite) a few deer in the ravine.
- 10) Edward was at a ( lose, loss) for words when asked about making a commitment.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) May I please ( loan, borrow, lend) your book?
- 12) The cafeteria is over ( their, there) near the bookstore.
- 13) Of what (use, used) are those old windows?
- 14) Maria asked her parents to ( loan, lend) her money for a new car..
- 15) You should ( of, have) called before you came.
- 16) Everyone says (their, they're, there) the best in the business.
- 17) I would be happy to ( loan, lend, borrow) you my copy.
- 18) Please don't go any ( further, farther) until you have checked your work.
- 19) With the addition of a second job, I now have ( less, fewer) hours for recreation.
- 20) I have more (then, than) enough leftovers for dinner tomorrow night.



Word Usage 2-2a  
(Use of Then or Than)

Note: **Then** is an adverb that refers to time. It rhymes with pen.

**Than** is a conjunction used with comparisons. It rhymes with pan.

Directions: Write the correct word, **then or than**, in the space provided.

Example: If you are correct, _____ go ahead and finish the test. (then, than) The correct answer is <b>then</b> because it refers to time.
---

- 1) She likes you more \_\_\_\_\_ me. (then, than)
- 2) First, you take a cup of flour, \_\_\_\_\_ you add the milk. (then, than)
- 3) Put on your swim suit, \_\_\_\_\_ jump into the pool. (then, than)
- 4) I would rather go to the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ eat that casserole. (then, than)
- 5) I am going to my mother's house first and \_\_\_\_\_ to work. (then, than)
- 6) I would rather wear the blue sweater \_\_\_\_\_ the red one. (then, than)
- 7) Do your homework and \_\_\_\_\_ watch television. (then, than)
- 8) I would like to fly rather \_\_\_\_\_ drive to California. (then, than)
- 9) Marge likes French fries more \_\_\_\_\_ mashed potatoes. (then, than)
- 10) When the alarm clock rings, \_\_\_\_\_ it is time to get up. (then, than)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) He likes you more \_\_\_\_\_ me. (then, than)
- 12) First, you take a cup of flour, and \_\_\_\_\_ you sift it. (then, than)
- 13) There are five prime numbers less \_\_\_\_\_ ten. (then, than)
- 14) Come over to my house first, and \_\_\_\_\_ we can go to the movies. (then, than)
- 15) I like to eat chocolate rather \_\_\_\_\_ fruit. (then, than)
- 16) My sister will go to work first, and \_\_\_\_\_ she will meet me. (then, than)
- 17) The thief would rather break into the bank \_\_\_\_\_ your house. (then, than)
- 18) Would you be able to drive me to work and \_\_\_\_\_ take the kids to school? (then, than)
- 19) I would like to play golf first and \_\_\_\_\_ go out to eat. (then, than)
- 20) First, I plant the seeds; \_\_\_\_\_ I water them. (then, than)

## Word Usage 2-2a KEY

Directions: Write the correct word, **then or than**, in the space provided.

Example: If you are correct, \_\_\_\_\_ go ahead and finish the test. (then, than)  
The correct answer is **then** because it refers to time.

- 1) She likes you more than me. (then, than)
  - 2) First, you take a cup of flour, then you add the milk. (then, than)
  - 3) Put on your swim suit, then jump into the pool. (then, than)
  - 4) I would rather go to the dentist than eat that casserole.
  - 5) I am going to my mother's house first and then to work. (then, than)
  - 6) I would rather wear the blue sweater than the red one. (then, than)
  - 7) Do your homework and then watch television. (then, than)
  - 8) I would like to fly rather than drive to California. (then, than)
  - 9) Marge likes French fries more than mashed potatoes. (then, than)
  - 10) When the alarm clock rings, then it is time to get up. (then, than)
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) He likes you more than me. (then, than)
  - 12) First, you take a cup of flour, and then you sift it. (then, than)
  - 13) There are five prime numbers less than ten. (then, than)
  - 14) Come over to my house first, and then we can go to the movies. (then, than)
  - 15) I like to eat chocolate rather than fruit. (then, than)
  - 16) My sister will go to work first, and then she will meet me. (then, than)
  - 17) The thief would rather break into the bank than your house. (then, than)
  - 18) Would you be able to drive me to work and then take the kids to school? (then, than)
  - 19) I would like to play golf first and then go out to eat. (then, than)
  - 20) First, I plant the seeds; then I water them. (then, than)

Word Usage 2-2b (your/you're)

Note: YOUR is a possessive pronoun. The word YOUR is followed by a noun – like YOUR life, YOUR bike, **YOUR** car, **YOUR** family.

YOU'RE is a contraction. It is a short way of saying YOU ARE!  
For example, YOU ARE going to the store. YOU'RE going to the store.

Directions: Write the correct word (**your** or **you're**) in the space provided.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ N  
\_\_\_\_\_ jacket is torn. (**your**, you're)

Choose the possessive *your* because **YOUR** is followed by the noun *jacket*.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ going to get a raise.
- 2) I cleaned \_\_\_\_\_ room.
- 3) My dog is nicer than \_\_\_\_\_ dog.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ are getting too fat!
- 5) Where are \_\_\_\_\_ mittens?
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_ a big fan of the team.
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ hot dog is cold.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ fans are cheering for him too!
- 9) What do you think \_\_\_\_\_ doing?
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ too old for this game.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) I like \_\_\_\_\_ new car.
- 12) When would you like to fly \_\_\_\_\_ kite.
- 13) \_\_\_\_\_ too small for that bike.
- 14) If \_\_\_\_\_ going to the mall, please call me.
- 15) When \_\_\_\_\_ finished with the dishes, I will help you paint the walls.
- 16) Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ phone number.
- 17) I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ advice.
- 18) Read me \_\_\_\_\_ favorite story.
- 19) Pick up \_\_\_\_\_ dirty socks.
- 20) I think I will help you put up \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas tree.

Word Usage 2-2b KEY (your/you're)

Directions: Write the correct word (**your** or **you're**) in the space provided.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ N  
*jacket* is torn. (**your**, you're)

Choose the possessive *your* because **YOUR** is followed by the noun *jacket*.

- 1) You're going to get a raise.
  - 2) I cleaned your *room*.
  - 3) My dog is nicer than your *dog*.
  - 4) You're getting too fat!
  - 5) Where are your *mittens*?
  - 6) You're a big fan of that team.
  - 7) Your *hot dog* is cold.
  - 8) Your *fans* are cheering for him too!
  - 9) What do you think you're doing?
  - 10) You're too old for this game.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) I like your *new car*.
  - 12) When would you like to fly your *kite*.
  - 13) You're too small for that bike.
  - 14) If you're going to the mall, please call me.
  - 15) When you're finished with the dishes, I will help you paint the walls.
  - 16) Please give me your *phone number*.
  - 17) I don't want your *advice*.
  - 18) Read me your *favorite story*.
  - 19) Pick up your *dirty socks*.
  - 20) I think I will help you put up your *Christmas tree*.

Usage 2-2c - *There, Their, and They're*

The words **there**, **their**, and **they're** are examples of words that sound alike (homophone) but have different meanings. Pay attention to how these words are used in a sentence in order to choose the correct one. The word **there** is used two ways; it can mean the opposite of *here*, or it can be used as “a filler” before a verb. Here are two examples: “Put the groceries **there** on the counter.” or “**There** is much work to do.” **Their** means “belonging to them” and is a possessive pronoun, so it comes before a noun. **They're** is a contraction for “they + are.” The apostrophe takes the place of the missing letter “a.” Always be sure to read “they're” as “they are” when deciding if this is the correct choice for a sentence.

Directions: Choose the correct word (*there, their, or they're*) for the following sentences.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ planning to start today. **They're** planning to start today.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ team is doing really well.
- 2) Is that \_\_\_\_\_ new car?
- 3) Please put the vase over \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) I think \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the party.
- 5) It seems that \_\_\_\_\_ are more geese that stay in the winter every year.
- 6) The movie had \_\_\_\_\_ total attention.
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ are many different ways to solve a problem.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ always goofing around.
- 9) \_\_\_\_\_ going to \_\_\_\_\_ cabin near Antigo.
- 10) Please put the flowers over \_\_\_\_\_ on the table.
- 11) I can't understand why \_\_\_\_\_ always late.
- 12) Have you gone to see \_\_\_\_\_ new house?
- 13) \_\_\_\_\_ is much to do and little time.
- 14) I think \_\_\_\_\_ new car is really nice.
- 15) Why are \_\_\_\_\_ so many mosquitoes?

◆ Check your work.

Usage 2-2c - *There, Their, and They're*  
Answer Key

The words **there**, **their**, and **they're** are examples of words that sound alike (homophone) but have different meanings. Pay attention to how these words are used in a sentence in order to choose the correct one. The word **there** is used two ways; it can mean the opposite of *here*, or it can be used as “a filler” before a verb. Here are two examples: “Put the groceries **there** on the counter.” or “**There** is much work to do.” **Their** means “belonging to them” and is a possessive pronoun, so it comes before a noun. **They're** is a contraction for “they + are.” The apostrophe takes the place of the missing letter “a.” Always be sure to read “they're” as “they are” when deciding if this is the correct choice for a sentence.

Directions: Choose the correct word (*there, their, or they're*) for the following sentences.

Example: \_\_\_\_\_ planning to start today. **They're** planning to start today.

- 1) **Their** team is doing really well.
- 2) Is that **their** new car?
- 3) Please put the vase over **there**.
- 4) I think **they're** coming to the party.
- 5) It seems that **there** are more geese that stay in the winter every year.
- 6) The movie had **their** total attention.
- 7) **There** are many different ways to solve a problem.
- 8) **They're** always goofing around.
- 9) **They're** going to **their** cabin near Antigo.
- 10) Please put the flowers over **there** on the table.
- 11) I can't understand why **they're** always late.
- 12) Have you gone to see **their** new house?
- 13) **There** is much to do and little time.
- 14) I think **their** new car is really nice.
- 15) Why are **there** so many mosquitoes?

◆ Check your work.

### Usage 2-3

Directions: Underline the correct word to complete each sentence.

farther/further	loose/lose/loss	quiet/quite	than/then
fewer/less	have/of	lend/borrow/loan	their/there/they're
use/used			

- 1) Do we have to go much ( further / farther ) ?
- 2) I don't want to ( lose / loss / loose ) my car keys again.
- 3) Please be ( quite / quiet ) !
- 4) We went to the movie and ( then / than ) to a great place for pizza.
- 5) There were ( fewer / less ) people at Brewer games this summer.
- 6) ( Your / You're ) mom told me about your accident.
- 7) Can you take this court case ( further / farther ) ?
- 8) The death of her father was a great ( lose / loss / loose ) to her.
- 9) I'm going to ask if I can ( lend / borrow / /loan ) her new sweater.
- 10) Are you going to (use / used ) the computer this afternoon?
- 11) Would you be able to ( lend / borrow / loan ) me your crock pot?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 12) If you don't watch out, ( your / you're ) going to fall!
- 13) Were you able to find ( their / there / they're ) house?
- 14) They were ( quiet / quite ) excited about their vacation.
- 15) There will be ( less / fewer ) room in the garden for flowers now that we put in the bushes.
- 16) I am not ( use / used ) to hearing my name on the announcements.
- 17) ( There / Their / They're ) having us over for a football party.
- 18) I am going to have the bank ( loan / lend / borrow ) paid up within a year.
- 19) Just put the cat in her bed over ( there / their / they're ).
- 20) There are ( less / fewer ) kids playing soccer this summer.
- 21) Mom should ( have / of ) called you to tell you I was coming.
- 22) I like chicken so much more ( than / then ) fish.

Usage 2-3

Directions: Underline the correct word to complete each sentence.

farther/further	loose/lose/loss	quiet/quite	than/then
fewer/less	have/of	lend/borrow/loan	their/there/they're
use/used			

- 1) Do we have to go much ( further / farther )?
- 2) I don't want to ( lose / loss / loose ) my car keys again.
- 3) Please be ( quite / quiet )!
- 4) We went to the movie and ( then / than ) to a great place for pizza.
- 5) There were ( fewer / less ) people at Brewer games this summer.
- 6) ( Your / You're ) mom told me about your accident.
- 7) Can you take this court case ( further / farther )?
- 8) The death of her father was a great ( lose / loss / loose ) to her.
- 9) I'm going to ask if I can ( lend / borrow / /loan ) her new sweater.
- 10) Are you going to ( use / used ) the computer this afternoon?
- 11) Would you be able to ( lend / borrow / loan ) me your crock pot?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 12) If you don't watch out, ( your / you're ) going to fall!
- 13) Were you able to find ( their / there / they're ) house?
- 14) They were ( quiet / quite ) excited about their vacation.
- 15) There will be ( less / fewer ) room in the garden for flowers now that we put in the bushes.
- 16) I am not ( use / used ) to hearing my name on the announcements.
- 17) ( There / Their / They're ) having us over for a football party.
- 18) I am going to have the bank ( loan / lend / borrow ) paid up within a year.
- 19) Just put the cat in her bed over ( there / their / they're ).
- 20) There are ( less / fewer ) kids playing soccer this summer.
- 21) Mom should ( have / of ) called you to tell you I was coming.
- 22) I like chicken so much more ( than / then ) fish.



## Usage 2-4 Mixed

Directions: Write the correct word for each sentence.

Example:                    there    their    they're  
                                 \_\_\_\_\_ dogs ran out of the yard.    Their dogs ran out of the yard.

- loose            lose            loss
- 1) The farmer was at a \_\_\_\_\_ for words as he watched his barn burn.
- 2) Kay has a \_\_\_\_\_ tooth.
- 3) The Timber Rattlers \_\_\_\_\_ many players each year to the major leagues.
- quite            quiet
- 4) The play was \_\_\_\_\_ exciting as we took part in the rehearsal.
- 5) Please be \_\_\_\_\_ so everyone can hear.
- they're            there            their            theirs
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_ cars were in the Memorial Day parade.
- 7) Why don't you go over \_\_\_\_\_ to get your pencil?
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ never going to finish that huge breakfast.
- 9) The money and the keys are \_\_\_\_\_.
- then            than
- 10) Many of the boys would rather play basketball \_\_\_\_\_ football.
- 11) The dog will go to the vet and \_\_\_\_\_ get a treat.
- loan            lend            borrow
- 12) Please \_\_\_\_\_ me \$50 so I can buy a new sweatshirt with a FVTC logo. I will repay that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13) Juan will \_\_\_\_\_ me his new bike for the trail ride.
- 14) May I \_\_\_\_\_ your red and green scarf for the holiday parade?
- use            used
- 15) The parents of the players will \_\_\_\_\_ extra money for new jerseys.
- 16) Tony has \_\_\_\_\_ every option he knows to fix his car.
- have            of
- 17) The Romans \_\_\_\_\_ the twentieth century were in constant battle.
- 18) Ruth will \_\_\_\_\_ ridden her bike for 60 miles by 6:00 p.m.
- fewer            less
- 19) I have counted \_\_\_\_\_ people at the charity event than last year.
- 20) Max would not take \_\_\_\_\_ than \$20 for mowing the lawn.
- farther            further
- 21) Nothing is \_\_\_\_\_ from the truth than saying Brett is a poor sport.
- 22) Katee lives \_\_\_\_\_ than 15 miles from the university.

## Usage 2-4 Mixed - KEY

Directions: Write the correct word for each sentence.

Example:                    there    their    they're  
                                 \_\_\_\_\_ dogs ran out of the yard.    Their dogs ran out of the yard.

loose                    lose                    loss

- 1) The farmer was at a loss for words as he watched his barn burn.
- 2) Kay has a loose tooth.
- 3) The Timber Rattlers lose many players each year to the major leagues.

quite                    quiet

- 4) The play was quite exciting as we took part in the rehearsal.
- 5) Please be quiet so everyone can hear.

they're                    there                    their                    theirs

- 6) Their cars were in the Memorial Day parade.
- 7) Why don't you go over there to get your pencil?
- 8) They're never going to finish that huge breakfast.
- 9) The money and the keys are theirs.

then                    than

- 10) Many of the boys would rather play basketball than football.
- 11) The dog will go to the vet and then get a treat.

loan                    lend                    borrow

- 12) Please lend me \$50, so I can buy a new sweatshirt with a FVTC logo. I will repay that loan.
- 13) Juan will lend me his new bike for the trail ride.
- 14) May I borrow your red and green scarf for the holiday parade?

use                    used

- 15) The parents of the players will use extra money for new jerseys.
- 16) Tony has used every option he knows to fix his car.

have                    of

- 17) The Romans of the twentieth century were in constant battle.
- 18) Ruth will have ridden her bike for 60 miles by 6:00 p.m.

fewer                    less

- 19) I have counted fewer people at the charity event than last year.
- 20) Max would not take less than \$20 for mowing the lawn.

farther                    further

- 21) Nothing is further from the truth than saying Brett is a poor sport.

22) Katee lives farther than 15 miles from the university.

### Using “Legalized Sentence Repairs” 1c

Directions: Correct any sentence errors by combining (or separating) sentences. Use any of the approved methods from your text, pp. 14-20 to 14-21. Correct some sentences with commas and some with semicolons. Feel free to use any connecting words that make sense. If there are no errors, write correct.

Example:	Kris’s house was always a mess she had young children. Kris’s house was always a mess <b>because</b> she had young children.
----------	---

- 1) All the animals were awake at the zoo even the penguins were swimming.
- 2) The book was boring to her. Yet it was a bestseller.
- 3) Abby used salt instead of sugar in her dough she threw it out and started over.
- 4) The bees scared the little girl she wouldn’t go outside.
- 5) Autumn is my favorite season the leaves are so beautiful.
- 6) Stephen hated meetings. Unless there were going to be refreshments.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 7) The flowers were blooming. So my allergies were making my eyes water.
- 8) The computer cords were tangled. I couldn’t figure out which one led to the printer.
- 9) We got our pizza free. Since it wasn’t delivered on time.
- 10) We went to the bakery we needed to get a cake.
- 11) Going to the movies can be fun it can also be expensive.
- 12) Everyone makes mistakes. Some of us make more than others.

◆ Stop here and check your work.

Directions: Correct the following using each of the six methods from the text.

*We all ate her dinner it really didn’t taste that good.*

- 13) \_\_\_\_\_
- 14) \_\_\_\_\_
- 15) \_\_\_\_\_
- 16) \_\_\_\_\_
- 17) \_\_\_\_\_
- 18) \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

Legalized Sentence Repairs 1c – Key  
(These are only suggested answers; use your judgment.)

**Directions:** Correct any sentence errors by combining (or separating) sentences. Use any of the approved methods. Correct some sentences with commas and some with semicolons. Feel free to use any connecting words that make sense. If there are no errors, write **correct**.

**Example:** Kris's house was always a mess she had young children.  
Kris's house was always a mess **because** she had young children.

- 1) All the animals were awake at the zoo; even the penguins were swimming.
  - 2) The book was boring to her, yet it was a bestseller.
  - 3) **Because** Abby used salt instead of sugar in her dough, she threw it out and started over.
  - 4) The bees scared the little girl; **consequently**, she wouldn't go outside.
  - 5) Autumn is my favorite season. The leaves are so beautiful.
  - 6) Stephen hated meetings **unless** there were going to be refreshments.
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 7) The flowers were blooming, so my allergies were making my eyes water.
  - 8) The computer cords were tangled. I couldn't figure out which one led to the printer. **Correct**
  - 9) We got our pizza free since it wasn't delivered on time.
  - 10) We went to the bakery, for we needed to get a cake.
  - 11) Going to the movies can be fun; **however**, it can also be expensive.
  - 12) Everyone makes mistakes. Some of us make more than others. **Correct**

◆ Stop here and check your work.

**Directions:** Correct the following using each of the six methods from the text.

*We all ate her dinner it really didn't taste that good.*

- 13) We all ate her dinner. It really didn't taste that good.
- 14) We all ate her dinner, but it didn't taste that good.
- 15) We all ate her dinner; it really didn't taste that good.
- 16) We all ate her dinner; however, it really didn't taste that good.
- 17) Although we all ate her dinner, it really didn't taste that good.
- 18) We all ate her dinner although it really didn't taste that good.

### Using the words THAN OR AS in Comparisons 2 (Ex 4)

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form in the sentences below. Write the implied words in the blank .

Examples:

*Carmine was a good at math as (**she**, her) at writing. (was): **was** is the implied word.  
The captain of the team swims better than (**I**, me) (swim): **swim** is the implied word.*

Helpful hints:

After the words *than* or *as*, insert in parentheses the words implied (the words which are actually included in the meaning of the sentence but not printed.)

*Refer to sample sentences above.*

---

- 1) Do you think that Brittany Spears sings better than (I, me)\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Mya likes living a simple life as much as (he, him) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) Orlando spends more time with his family than with (I, me).
- 4) Sasha was happier with her musical performance than (he, him) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) They found a bigger Christmas tree this year than (we, us) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) When the doctor retired, someone new replaced him, and we like her as much as we \_\_\_\_\_ (he, him).
- 7) The neighbor has more patience with her dog than (they, them) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) Sting is on a concert tour; he sings more often than (she, her) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9) We are happier living a simpler life and spending less money than (we, us) ever imagined.
- 10) Jan reads more books than (I, me) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11) Do you read as many books as (she, her) \_\_\_\_\_?
- 12) Having a hobby helps her enjoy her spare time more than (they, them) \_\_\_\_\_ their spare time.
- 13) She feels better about her exercise program than (he, him) \_\_\_\_\_ about his.
- 14) My daughter-in-law is a better cook of Mexican food than (I, me) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15) My friend is better than (I, me) \_\_\_\_\_ at taking time to relax.

◆ Check your work.

## Using the words THAN OR AS in Comparisons 2 - KEY

Directions: Underline the correct pronoun form in the sentences below. Write the implied words in the blank .

Examples:

*Carmine was a good at math as (**she**, her) at writing. (was); **was** is the implied word.  
The captain of the team swims better than (**I**, me) (swim); **swim** is the implied word.*

Helpful hints:

After the words *than* or *as*, insert in parentheses the words implied (the words which are actually included in the meaning of the sentence but not printed.)

Refer to sample sentences above.

- 1) Do you think that Brittany Spears sings better than (**I**, me) (sing).
- 2) Mya likes living a simple life as much as (**he**, him) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) Orlando spends more time with his family than with (I, **me**).
- 4) Sasha was happier with her musical performance than (**he**, him) (was).
- 5) They found a bigger Christmas tree this year than (**we**, us) (found or did).
- 6) When the doctor retired, someone new replaced him, and we like her as much as (we like) (he, **him**).
- 7) The neighbor has more patience with her dog than (**they**, them) (have or do).
- 8) Sting is on a concert tour; he sings more often than (**she**, her) (sings or does).
- 9) We are happier living a simpler life and spending less money than (**we**, us) ever imagined.
- 10) Jan reads more books than (**I**, me) (read or do).
- 11) Do you read as many books as (**she**, her) (reads or does) ?
- 12) Having a hobby helps her enjoy her spare time more than (**they**, them) (enjoy) their spare time.
- 13) She feels better about her exercise program than (**he**, him) (feels or does) about his.
- 14) My daughter-in-law is a better cook of Mexican food than (**I**, me) (am).
- 15) My friend is better than (**I**, me) (am) at taking time to relax.

### Verb Phrases 3 (includes Verb Infinitives)

Directions: Underline all the verb phrases in the sentences below.  
Circle the verb infinitives (“to + action” as shown shaded in the example below.)

Example: The football player had tried to catch the ball before he was tackled. (Be careful of “to + people or places” where “to” functions as a *preposition* - refer to Lesson 3.)

1. Julia will have to walk to kindergarten in the fall.
  2. Sudoku number puzzles can be a great way to exercise your brain.
  3. What time does Dan plan to take Grandma to the grocery store?
  4. Angela likes to work in her garden, so she can give flowers to her friends.
  5. After Andy had climbed to the top of the ladder, he worked to attach the paint can securely before starting to paint the house.
  6. They had decided to travel by airplane for their trip to San Diego.
  7. The dog would have liked to play at the dog park, but no one wanted to take him there in the hot weather.
  8. Saturdays are often set aside to clean the house and to run errands.
  9. Bob had shopped for a long time before he decided to buy the new red car.
  10. What time is Ben required to arrive at the airport so he can fly to Seattle?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Checking your blood pressure can be the best way to monitor your heart's health.
  12. When Dad decides to rake the leaves, the rest of the family will be expected to help.
  13. In Green Bay, fans will continue to crowd into Lambeau Field even on a snowy day.
  14. Watching five-year-olds playing soccer can be a very entertaining way to spend a Saturday afternoon.
  15. Nancy had hoped to represent the culinary club at the baking competition until her cake burst into flames.
  16. The women of the Whitehall family have always loved to shop all day on the day after Thanksgiving.
  17. The new grandparents could hardly wait to hold their new granddaughter.
  18. “The time has come,” the Walrus said, “to talk of many things...” is a line from a Lewis Carroll poem.
  19. Juanita has worked at the bank for three years to pay off her college tuition bill.
  20. I have always tried to arrive at my appointments on time.

◆ **Check your work.**



Verb Phrases 3 (includes Verb Infinitives) - KEY

Directions: Underline all the verb phrases in the sentences below.  
Circle the verb infinitives (“to + action” as shown shaded in the example below.)

Example: The football player had tried to catch the ball before he was tackled. (Be careful of “to + people or places” where “to” functions as a *preposition* - refer to Lesson 3.)

1. Julia will have to walk to kindergarten in the fall.
  2. Sudoku number puzzles can be a great way to exercise your brain.
  3. What time does Dan plan to take Grandma to the grocery store?
  4. Angela likes to work in her garden, so she can give flowers to her friends.
  5. After Andy had climbed to the top of the ladder, he worked to attach the paint can securely before starting to paint the house.
  6. They had decided to travel by airplane for their trip to San Diego.
  7. The dog would have liked to play at the dog park, but no one wanted to take him there in the hot weather.
  8. Saturdays are often set aside to clean the house and to run errands.
  9. Bob had shopped for a long time before he decided to buy the new red car.
  10. What time is Ben required to arrive at the airport, so he can fly to Seattle?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
11. Checking your blood pressure can be the best way to monitor your heart's health.
  12. When Dad decides to rake the leaves, the rest of the family will be expected to help.
  13. In Green Bay, fans will continue to crowd into Lambeau Field even on a snowy day.
  14. Watching five-year-olds playing soccer can be a very entertaining way to spend a Saturday afternoon.
  15. Nancy had hoped to represent the Culinary Club at the baking competition until her cake burst into flames.
  16. The women of the Whitehall family have always loved to shop all day on the day after Thanksgiving.
  17. The new grandparents could hardly wait to hold their new granddaughter.
  18. “The time has come,” the Walrus said, “to talk of many things...” is a line from a Lewis Carroll poem.
  19. Juanita has worked at the bank for three years to pay her college tuition bill.
  20. I have always tried to arrive at my appointments on time.

## Verb Phrases 4 (includes Verb Infinitives)

**Verbs** show *action* or *state of being* in a sentence.

**Action verbs** answer the question, “the person or thing did/does what?”

Example: The children *flew* their kites in the park.  
[What did the children do? They *flew* kites.]

**State of being** and **linking verbs** connect the subject to something that describes it.

Example: The trees *appear* golden in the sunset.  
Dimitri *is* my brother.

A **verb infinitive** (see p. 6-5 in *Grammar for Writing*) is a verb form, but it is **NEVER** used as the verb in a sentence. It is made up of the word “to” plus a verb.

Examples: *to rest, to study, to sleep*

Directions: Underline the verb phrases in the sentences below.  
Circle the verb infinitives (“to + verb” as shown shaded in the example below.)

Example: The football player had tried **to catch** the ball before he was tackled.  
(Be careful of “to + people or places” where “to” functions as a *preposition* - refer to Lesson 3.)

1. Carlotta is planning to go to Chicago next week.
  2. Crossword puzzles and playing cards seem to prevent memory loss.
  3. Poua promised to take Xee to the soccer match tonight.
  4. Meisha often drives to the beach to go swimming.
  5. What time do you expect the plane to arrive from Minneapolis?
  6. My dog likes to dig holes in the backyard, so he can bury his bones.
  7. My husband and I are hoping to visit Alaska for our anniversary.
- ◆ **Stop here and check your work.**
8. On Saturdays, I like to sleep late and then to take a drive in the country.
  9. The clouds had gathered for several hours before it started to rain.
  10. Frieda offered to stop at the grocery store after work.
  11. No one likes to drive on Highway 41 during rush hour.
  12. Do you like to travel to strange and exotic places?
  13. Have you ever been asked to speak in front of a large group?
  14. Watching sports on a huge television screen is the way my family likes to spend Sunday afternoons.
  15. Fiona decided to bring a salad to the picnic.

◆ **Check your work.**

### Verb Phrases 4 (includes Verb Infinitives) **KEY**

Directions: Underline the verb phrases in the sentences below.  
Circle the verb infinitives (“to + a verb” as shown shaded in the example below.)

Example: The football player had tried **to catch** the ball before he was tackled.  
(Be careful of “to + people or places” where “to” functions as a *preposition* - refer to Lesson 3.)

1. Carlotta **is planning** **to go** to Chicago next week. (*to Chicago* is a prepositional phrase)
2. Crossword puzzles and playing cards **seem** **to prevent** memory loss.
3. Poua **promised** **to take** Xee to the soccer match tonight.
4. Meisha often **drives** to the beach **to go** swimming. (*to the beach* is a prep. phrase)
5. What time **do** you **expect** the plane **to arrive** from Minneapolis?
6. My dog **likes** **to dig** holes in the backyard, so he **can bury** his bones.
7. My husband and I **are hoping** **to visit** Alaska for our anniversary.

◆ **Stop here and check your work.**

8. On Saturdays, I **like** to sleep late and then **to take** a drive in the country.
9. The clouds **had gathered** for several hours before it **started** **to rain**.
10. Frieda **offered** **to stop** at the grocery store after work.
11. No one **likes** **to drive** on Highway 41 during rush hour.
12. **Do** you **like** **to travel** to strange and exotic places? (*to strange...places* is a prep. phrase)
13. **Have** you ever **been asked** **to speak** in front of a large group?
14. Watching sports on a huge television screen **is** the way my family **likes** **to spend** Sunday afternoons.
15. Fiona **decided** **to bring** a salad to the picnic. (*to the picnic* is a prep. phrase)

## Verbals – Gerunds, Participles, and Infinitives

What It's Called	How It's Used	How It Looks	What It Does in a Sentence
<b>GERUND</b> (pronounced "jair -und")	Noun	<i>-ing</i> ending Examples: <i>walking, eating, reading, singing</i>	<input type="radio"/> Subject of a sentence <input type="radio"/> After prepositions
<b>INFINITIVE</b> (also called a "verb infinitive")	Noun Adjective Adverb	To + verb (action word) Examples: <i>To walk, to eat, to read</i>	<input type="radio"/> Easy to recognize (always <i>to</i> + action) <input type="radio"/> Names as a subject or object <input type="radio"/> Describes as an adjective or an adverb <input type="radio"/> (See # 3, 4, 5, 6)
<b>PARTICIPLE</b>	Adjective	<i>-ed/ d / t / n or -ing</i> endings Examples: <i>eaten, burnt, stopped, walking</i>	<input type="radio"/> Describes a noun <input type="radio"/> Introductory phrase (followed by a comma)

### Hints:

- The verbals most likely to be confused are gerunds (-ing nouns) and participles (-ing adjectives).  
 Examples: (gerund) ***Walking*** is my favorite form of exercise.  
 (participle) ***Walking*** into the room, Terry saw the new baby.
- Remember that every sentence has a verb. Helping verbs (a form of *to be* – *is, was, were*, etc., or a form of *to have* – *have, has, had*) will be one signal that you are dealing with a verb, not a verbal.

Study these examples:

- Assisting* the Red Cross volunteers is their most important commitment.  
 (*Assisting* is the subject of the sentence; therefore, it is a noun AND a ***gerund***.)
- The Red Cross volunteers are *assisting* flood victims.  
 (Notice the helping verb are; are *assisting* is a verb.)

- The flooded homes needed many repairs.  
(The word flooded describes *homes* and ends in –ed; therefore, it’s a **participle**.)
- The high waters had *flooded* half of the city’s homes.  
(Here, *had* is a helping verb; therefore, had flooded is a verb.)

3. Be careful not to confuse *verb infinitives* and *prepositional phrases*.

Examples: (verb infinitive) **To work** as a musician is Tia’s dream.

Here *to work* is used as the subject of the sentence, so it is a noun.

(prepositional phrase) Tia went **to work** at 6 a.m. today.

Note: When “to” is used with a person (*to her* or *to my friend*) or with a place (*to my room* or *to Florida*) it is not an infinitive; it is a *preposition*.

### **Advanced concepts**

4. Infinitives can be used as *subjects* of a sentence or *objects* of a verb.

Example: To read a good book next to a roaring fire is my favorite way to spend a snowy evening. (Here *to read* is the subject of the sentence.)

Example: Tia needed to read her biology assignment carefully; she had a test on this material soon. (Here *to read* is the object of the verb “needed.”)

5. Infinitives can be used as *adjectives*.

Example: George has an assignment to read. (Here *to read* describes assignment by showing “what kind of assignment;” therefore, it is used as an adjective.)

6. Infinitives can be used as *adverbs*.

Example: The people at the holy shrine knelt to pray. (Here *to pray* modifies the verb “knelt;” it is used as an adverb telling “why the people knelt.)

## Verbals – Gerunds, Participles, and Infinitives

What It's Called	How It's Used	How It Looks	What It Does in a Sentence
<b>GERUND</b> (pronounced “jair –und”)	Noun	<i>-ing</i> ending Examples: <i>walking, eating, reading, singing</i>	<input type="radio"/> Subject of a sentence <input type="radio"/> After prepositions
<b>INFINITIVE</b> (also called a “verb infinitive”)	Noun Adjective Adverb	To + verb (action word) Examples: <i>To walk, to eat, to read</i>	<input type="radio"/> Easy to recognize (always <i>to</i> + action) <input type="radio"/> Names as a subject or object <input type="radio"/> Describes as an adjective or an adverb <input type="radio"/> (See # 3, 4, 5, 6)
<b>PARTICIPLE</b>	Adjective	<i>-ed/ d / t / n or –ing</i> endings Examples: <i>eaten, burnt, stopped, walking</i>	<input type="radio"/> Describes a noun <input type="radio"/> Introductory phrase (followed by a comma)

### Hints:

- The verbals most likely to be confused are gerunds (-ing nouns) and participles (-ing adjectives).  
 Examples: (gerund) ***Walking*** is my favorite form of exercise.  
 (participle) ***Walking*** into the room, Terry saw the new baby.
- Remember that every sentence has a verb. Helping verbs (a form of *to be* – *is, was, were*, etc., or a form of *to have* – *have, has, had*) will be one signal that you are dealing with a verb, not a verbal.

Study these examples:

- Assisting* the Red Cross volunteers is their most important commitment.  
 (*Assisting* is the subject of the sentence; therefore, it is a noun AND a ***gerund***.)
- The Red Cross volunteers are *assisting* flood victims.  
 (Notice the helping verb are; are *assisting* is a verb.)

- The flooded homes needed many repairs.  
(The word flooded describes *homes* and ends in –ed; therefore, it’s a **participle**.)
- The high waters had *flooded* half of the city’s homes.  
(Here, *had* is a helping verb; therefore, had flooded is a verb.)

3. Be careful not to confuse *verb infinitives* and *prepositional phrases*.

Examples: (verb infinitive) **To work** as a musician is Tia’s dream.

Here *to work* is used as the subject of the sentence, so it is a noun.

(prepositional phrase) Tia went **to work** at 6 a.m. today.

Note: When “to” is used with a person (*to her* or *to my friend*) or with a place (*to my room* or *to Florida*) it is not an infinitive; it is a *preposition*.

### **Advanced concepts**

4. Infinitives can be used as *subjects* of a sentence or *objects* of a verb.

Example: To read a good book next to a roaring fire is my favorite way to spend a snowy evening. (Here *to read* is the subject of the sentence.)

Example: Tia needed to read her biology assignment carefully; she had a test on this material soon. (Here *to read* is the object of the verb “needed.”)

5. Infinitives can be used as *adjectives*.

Example: George has an assignment to read. (Here *to read* describes assignment by showing “what kind of assignment;” therefore, it is used as an adjective.)

6. Infinitives can be used as *adverbs*.

Example: The people at the holy shrine knelt to pray. (Here *to pray* modifies the verb “knelt;” it is used as an adverb telling “why the people knelt.)

## Verbals – Gerunds, Participles, and Infinitives

What It's Called	How It's Used	How It Looks	What It Does in a Sentence
<b>GERUND</b> (pronounced "jair -und")	Noun	<i>-ing</i> ending Examples: <i>walking, eating, reading, singing</i>	<input type="radio"/> Subject of a sentence <input type="radio"/> After prepositions
<b>INFINITIVE</b> (also called a "verb infinitive")	Noun Adjective Adverb	To + verb (action word) Examples: <i>To walk, to eat, to read</i>	<input type="radio"/> Easy to recognize (always <i>to</i> + action) <input type="radio"/> Names as a subject or object <input type="radio"/> Describes as an adjective or an adverb <input type="radio"/> (See # 3, 4, 5, 6)
<b>PARTICIPLE</b>	Adjective	<i>-ed/ d / t / n or -ing</i> endings Examples: <i>eaten, burnt, stopped, walking</i>	<input type="radio"/> Describes a noun <input type="radio"/> Introductory phrase (followed by a comma)

### Hints:

- The verbals most likely to be confused are gerunds (-ing nouns) and participles (-ing adjectives).  
 Examples: (gerund) ***Walking*** is my favorite form of exercise.  
 (participle) ***Walking*** into the room, Terry saw the new baby.
- Remember that every sentence has a verb. Helping verbs (a form of *to be* – *is, was, were*, etc., or a form of *to have* – *have, has, had*) will be one signal that you are dealing with a verb, not a verbal.

Study these examples:

- Assisting* the Red Cross volunteers is their most important commitment.  
 (*Assisting* is the subject of the sentence; therefore, it is a noun AND a ***gerund***.)
- The Red Cross volunteers are *assisting* flood victims.  
 (Notice the helping verb are; are *assisting* is a verb.)



- The flooded homes needed many repairs.  
(The word flooded describes *homes* and ends in –ed; therefore, it’s a **participle**.)
- The high waters had *flooded* half of the city’s homes.  
(Here, *had* is a helping verb; therefore, had flooded is a verb.)

3. Be careful not to confuse *verb infinitives* and *prepositional phrases*.

Examples: (verb infinitive) **To work** as a musician is Tia’s dream.

Here *to work* is used as the subject of the sentence, so it is a noun.

(prepositional phrase) Tia went **to work** at 6 a.m. today.

Note: When “to” is used with a person (*to her* or *to my friend*) or with a place (*to my room* or *to Florida*) it is not an infinitive; it is a *preposition*.

### **Advanced concepts**

4. Infinitives can be used as *subjects* of a sentence or *objects* of a verb.

Example: To read a good book next to a roaring fire is my favorite way to spend a snowy evening. (Here *to read* is the subject of the sentence.)

Example: Tia needed to read her biology assignment carefully; she had a test on this material soon. (Here *to read* is the object of the verb “needed.”)

5. Infinitives can be used as *adjectives*.

Example: George has an assignment to read. (Here *to read* describes assignment by showing “what kind of assignment;” therefore, it is used as an adjective.)

6. Infinitives can be used as *adverbs*.

Example: The people at the holy shrine knelt to pray. (Here *to pray* modifies the verb “knelt;” it is used as an adverb telling “why the people knelt.)

## Verbs and Verb Phrases 1

Directions: Underline all verbs and verb phrases in the following sentences.

Example: We saw her at the early morning services yesterday.

- 1) You should have brought some extra spoons.
- 2) How many times have you written to your grandparents?
- 3) A famous explorer will speak to our student body.
- 4) We should have gone there first.
- 5) Has the baby drunk all of its milk?
- 6) The man was hanged for the murder.
- 7) The pitcher threw a curve across the inside corner.
- 8) She had already given her speech.
- 9) I was at his house last night.
- 10) Will you sing us a song?

◆ Stop here and check your work.

- 11) Jim ate all of the chicken.
- 12) How long has he been flying?
- 13) She chose the mug with bright sunflowers.
- 14) Only one person has ever swum those rapids.
- 15) When do they begin work on the new library?
- 16) Your coat is still hanging there.
- 17) They have certainly talked a long time.
- 18) He told us the answer yesterday.
- 19) Has Bill ever taken an eye examination?
- 20) I had set the book on the end table before leaving home.
- 21) She correctly spelled every word on the list.
- 22) Don rode his bike to school this morning.

◆ Check your work.

### Verbs and Verb Phrases 1 - Key

Directions: Underline all verbs and verb phrases in the following sentences.

Example: We saw her at the early morning services yesterday.

- 1.) You should have brought some extra spoons.
- 2.) How many times have you written to your grandparents?
- 3.) A famous explorer will speak to our student body.
- 4.) We should have gone there first.
- 5.) Has the baby drunk all of its milk?
- 6.) The man was hanged for the murder.
- 7.) The pitcher threw a curve across the inside corner.
- 8.) She had already given her speech.
- 9.) I was at his house last night.
- 10.) Will you sing us a song?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11.) Jim ate all of the chicken.
- 12.) How long has he been flying?
- 13.) She chose the mug with bright sun flowers.
- 14.) Only one person has ever swum those rapids.
- 15.) When do they begin work on the new library?
- 16.) Your coat is still hanging there.
- 17.) They have certainly talked a long time.
- 18.) He told us the answer yesterday.
- 19.) Has Bill ever taken an eye examination?
- 20.) I had set the book on the end table before leaving home.
- 21.) She correctly spelled every word on the list.
- 22.) Don rode his bike to school this morning.

## VERBS & VERB PHRASES 2

Directions: Underline all the verbs and verb phrases in the following sentences.  
Label the helping verbs (HV) and main verbs (MV)

Example: My children's toys <sup>HV</sup> are always <sup>MV</sup> lying all over the family room.

- 1) We saw her at the early morning bus stop yesterday.
  - 2) You should have brought some extra spoons.
  - 3) How many times have you written to your grandparents?
  - 4) A famous explorer will speak to our student body.
  - 5) We should have gone to the Information Desk first.
  - 6) Has the baby drunk all of its milk?
  - 7) The pitcher threw a curve ball across the inside corner of the plate.
  - 8) She had already given her first speech to her oral/interpersonal communication class.
  - 9) I was at his house last night.
  - 10) Will you sing us a song?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Xee ate all of the chicken.
  - 12) How long has Tina been flying an airplane?
  - 13) She chose the lemon dessert from the dessert cart.
  - 14) Only one person has ever swum those rapids.
  - 15) When do they begin building the new library?
  - 16) Your coat is still hanging on the hook in the hall.
  - 17) They have certainly talked a long time.
  - 18) Toa might not have known the answer yesterday.
  - 19) Julisa must have left her notebook at home.
  - 20) Juan could have been riding his bicycle to school today.

◆ Check your work.

## VERBS & VERB PHRASES 2 - Key

Directions: Underline all the verbs and verb phrases in the following sentences.  
Label the helping verbs (HV) and main verbs (MV)

Example: My children's toys <sup>HV</sup> are always <sup>MV</sup> lying all over the family room.

- 1) We <sup>MV</sup> saw her at the early morning bus stop yesterday.
  - 2) You <sup>HV</sup> should have <sup>MV</sup> brought some extra spoons.
  - 3) How many times <sup>HV</sup> have you <sup>MV</sup> written to your grandparents?
  - 4) A famous explorer <sup>HV</sup> will <sup>MV</sup> speak to our student body.
  - 5) We <sup>HV</sup> should have <sup>MV</sup> gone to the Information Desk first.
  - 6) <sup>HV</sup> Has the baby <sup>MV</sup> drunk all of its milk?
  - 7) The pitcher <sup>MV</sup> threw a curve ball across the inside corner of the plate.
  - 8) She <sup>HV</sup> had already <sup>MV</sup> given her first speech to her oral/interpersonal communication class.
  - 9) I <sup>MV</sup> was at his house last night.
  - 10) <sup>HV</sup> Will you <sup>MV</sup> sing us a song?
- ◆ Stop here and check your work.
- 11) Xee <sup>MV</sup> ate all of the chicken.
  - 12) How long <sup>HV</sup> has Tina <sup>HV</sup> been <sup>MV</sup> flying an airplane?
  - 13) She <sup>MV</sup> chose the lemon dessert from the dessert cart.
  - 14) Only one person <sup>HV</sup> has ever <sup>MV</sup> swum those rapids.
  - 15) When <sup>HV</sup> do they <sup>MV</sup> begin building the new library?
  - 16) Your coat <sup>HV</sup> is still <sup>MV</sup> hanging on the hook in the hall.
  - 17) They <sup>HV</sup> have certainly <sup>MV</sup> talked a long time.
  - 18) Toa <sup>HV</sup> might not <sup>HV</sup> have <sup>MV</sup> known the answer yesterday.
  - 19) Julisa <sup>HV</sup> must <sup>HV</sup> have <sup>MV</sup> left her notebook at home.
  - 20) Juan <sup>HV</sup> could <sup>HV</sup> have <sup>HV</sup> been <sup>MV</sup> riding his bicycle to school today.

## VERBS and TENSES 1

Directions: Underline each verb and identify its tense (past, present, or future).

Example:	Our family <u>travels</u> to new places every summer.	<u>present</u>
----------	---	----------------

1) We went on a vacation to Minnesota last year. \_\_\_\_\_

2) Our family likes fishing and swimming in the lakes. \_\_\_\_\_

3) The children saved their allowances for the trip. \_\_\_\_\_

4) We enjoy camping in the parks. \_\_\_\_\_

5) Next summer we will travel to Upper Michigan to see the lighthouses. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Stop here and check your work.

6) Sadie and her friend decided to attend a technical college. \_\_\_\_\_

7) Currently they attend a local high school. \_\_\_\_\_

8) They will graduate in May of next year. \_\_\_\_\_

9) Many people see a career counselor to explore a variety of careers. \_\_\_\_\_

10) A career counselor helped Sadie and her friend to make a decision. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) In autumn the leaves fall from the trees. \_\_\_\_\_

12) The wind blew hard for several hours yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_

13) Last year it rained for five days in a row in November. \_\_\_\_\_

14) We gather firewood for our woodstove every year. \_\_\_\_\_

15) Hopefully we will use less fuel than last year. \_\_\_\_\_

◆ Check your work.

## VERBS and TENSES 1 – Answer Key

Directions: Underline each verb and identify its tense (past, present, or future).

Example:	Our family <u>travels</u> to new places every summer.	<u>present</u>
----------	---	----------------

1) We went on a vacation to Minnesota last year. past

2) Our family likes fishing and swimming in the lakes. present

3) The children saved their allowances for the trip. past

4) We enjoy camping in the parks. present

5) Next summer we will travel to Upper Michigan to see the lighthouses. future

◆ Stop here and check your work.

6) Sadie and her friend decided to attend a technical college. past

7) Currently they attend a local high school. present

8) They will graduate in May of next year. future

9) Many people see a career counselor to explore a variety of careers. present

10) A career counselor helped Sadie and her friend to make a decision. past

◆ Stop here and check your work.

11) In autumn the leaves fall from the trees. present

12) The wind blew hard for several hours yesterday. past

13) Last year it rained for five days in a row in November. past

14) We gather firewood for our woodstove every year. present

15) Hopefully we will use less fuel than last year. future

# INFORMATION SHEET 3

## Verb Overview

### 1. WHAT IS A VERB?

A verb is a word that tells what people/things **DO** (action verb) or what they **ARE** (linking verb).

### 2. REGULAR VERBS

Regular verbs add **-ED** to form the past tense (no other spelling change--they're predictable!)

walk → walked    call → called    help → helped    ask → asked    add → added

### 3. IRREGULAR VERBS

Irregular verbs have to be memorized. There is no way to predict how they form the past or past participle.

eat → ate/has eaten    drive → drove/has driven    ring → rang/has rung    see → saw/has seen

### 4. PRESENT TENSE (TIME) Present tense = happens regularly or is a fact.

Verbs that match *plurals* have **NO s**; verbs that match *singulars* **DO add s**. (Just the opposite of nouns!)

1                      2+                      1                      2+  
Our dog sleeps.    Our dogs sleep. / The car races.    The cars race. / We always eat at noon. / The sun rises.

### 5. LINKING VERBS

Words that tell what something or someone is are called **linking verbs**. Linking verbs *identify* or *describe* the subject of a sentence--person or thing being talked about. (See Information Sheet 4 for more on linking verbs.)

Their new car **is** red.    We **felt** cold at the football game.    She **became** a pilot.

### 6. ACTION VERBS

What someone or something *does* (physically or mentally) is expressed by an **action verb**.

They **ate** lunch with their friends.    We **should write** application letters tomorrow.  
Customers **will appreciate** value.    I **recognized** them.

### 7. INFINITIVE (To + Verb)

*What to remember about an infinitive: It is **never** used as the verb in a sentence. (To before it? Ignore it!)*

The **base form** (or infinitive) of a verb is like the base price of a car--it's the one that's modified or changed in some way to create all the other forms of that verb. It is made up of **to + the verb**.

to be (verb forms: *is, am, are, was, etc.*)    to have (forms: *have, has, had*)    to call    to eat

### 8. HELPING VERBS

A **helping** verb plus one or more other verbs forms a verb phrase--(verb = verb phrase; they mean the same thing). The following words are helping verbs when they are combined with other verbs. Learn them:

Main verbs OR helping verbs ↓	am	have	can	shall	↑ Helping verbs only
	is	has	could	should	
	are	had			
	was		may	will	
	were	do	might	would	
	be	does	must		
	being	did			
	been				

We **should have started** sooner.    They **might have been going** later.

I **am** definitely not **going** to the store.    He **has** already **come** back.

**Tip:** Memorize the 8 being verbs. For the rest, remember the sentence, "Has Clyde done my school work?" The first letters of the words can remind you of helping verbs (H-have, has, had; C-can, could; D-do, does, did; M-may, might must; S-shall, should; W-will, would)

Notice that describing words are not part of the verb. Don't include *always, already, just, never, not, now, often, really, soon*, and other adverbs (which often end in *-ly*) in verb phrases.



## FORMS OF IRREGULAR VERBS

PRESENT Basic verb form	PAST No helping verbs	PAST WITH HELPER Use <u>with</u> have, has, had, was, etc. **	PRESENT Basic verb form	PAST No helping verbs	PAST WITH HELPER Use <u>with</u> have, has, had, was, etc. **
become	became	have become	lose	lost	have lost
begin	began	has begun	mean	meant	has meant
bite	bit	had bitten	meet	met	had met
bleed	bled	have bled	pay	paid	have paid
blow	blew	has blown	put	put	has put
break	broke	had broken	read	read	had read
<b>bring</b>	<b>brought</b>	<b>have brought</b>	<b>ride</b>	<b>rode</b>	<b>have ridden</b>
buy	bought	has bought	ring	rang	has rung
catch	caught	had caught	<b>rise</b>	<b>rose</b>	<b>have risen</b>
<b>choose</b>	<b>chose</b>	<b>have chosen</b>	<b>run</b>	<b>ran</b>	<b>have run</b>
come	came	has come	say	said	has said
cost	cost	had cost	<b>see</b>	<b>saw</b>	<b>have seen</b>
do	did	have done	sell	sold	has sold
draw	drew	has drawn	set	set	had set
<b>drink</b>	<b>drank</b>	<b>have drunk</b>	shake	shook	have shaken
drive	drove	has driven	shoot	shot	has shot
eat	ate	had eaten	<b>shrink</b>	<b>shrank</b>	<b>have shrunk</b>
fall	fell	have fallen	shut	shut	had shut
feed	fed	has fed	sing	sang	have sung
feel	felt	had felt	sink	sank	has sunk
find	found	have found	sit	sat	had sat
fly	flew	has flown	sleep	slept	have slept
forget	forgot	had forgotten	speak	spoke	has spoken
freeze	froze	have frozen	spend	spent	had spent
get	got	has gotten	stand	stood	have stood
give	gave	had given	steal	stole	has stolen
<b>go</b>	<b>went</b>	<b>have gone</b>	swear	swore	had sworn
grow	grew	has grown	sweep	swept	have swept
have	had	had had	<b>swim</b>	<b>swam</b>	<b>have swum</b>
hear	heard	have heard	take	took	has taken
hide	hid	has hidden	teach	taught	had taught
hold	held	had held	tear	tore	have torn
hurt	hurt	have hurt	think	thought	has thought
keep	kept	has kept	throw	threw	had thrown
know	knew	had known	wake	woke	have woken
leave	left	have left	wear	wore	has worn
lay (put, place)	laid	has laid	win	won	had won
<b>lie</b> (rest, recline)	<b>lay</b>	<b>have lain</b>	write	wrote	have written

\*\* Be careful when using the past participle--the form that takes a helping verb. Memorize verbs that sound unfamiliar, especially the ones in **bold italics** (they're often misused in speaking). "I **have drunk** too much coffee and "She **has swum** ten laps" *ARE* correct in writing even though you may not be used to hearing them.